easy guide to the Ruy Lopez

by John Emms

EVERYMAN CHESS

Everyman Chess, formerly Cadogan Chess, is published by Everyman Publishers, London

First published in 1999 by Everyman Publishers plc, formerly Cadogan Books plc, Gloucester Mansions, 140A Shaftesbury Avenue, London WC2H 8HD in association with Gambit Publications Ltd, 69 Masbro Road, London W14 0LS.

Copyright © 1999 Gambit Publications

The right of John Emms to be identified as the author of this work has been asserted in accordance with the Copyrights, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, electrostatic, magnetic tape, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without prior permission in writing from the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A CIP catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

ISBN 1857442202

Distributed in North America by The Globe Pequot Press, 6 Business Park Road, P.O. Box 833, Old Saybrook, Connecticut 06475-0833. Telephone 1-800 243 0495 (toll free)

All other sales enquiries should be directed to Everyman Chess, Gloucester Mansions, 140A Shaftesbury Avenue, London WC2H 8HD tel: 0171 539 7600 fax: 0171 379 4060

To Christine

EVERYMAN CHESS SERIES (formerly Cadogan Chess)

Chief Advisor: Garry Kasparov Series Editor: Murray Chandler

Edited by Graham Burgess and typeset by Petra Nunn for Gambit Publications Ltd.

Printed in Great Britain by Redwood Books, Trowbridge, Wilts.

Contents

Syn	nbols	4
Bibliography		4
Introduction		. 6
1	Rare Third Moves for Black	Ģ
2	The Schliemann Variation	18
3	The Classical Variation	29
4	The Berlin Defence	35
5	The Deferred Steinitz and Other Fourth Move	
	Alternatives	47
6	Møller and Arkhangelsk Variations	55
7	The Open Lopez	69
8	The 8 a4 Anti-Marshall	81
9	Ideas in the Closed Lopez	89
10	Rare Closed Lopez Variations	96
11	The Karpov Variation	99
12	The Zaitsev Variation	107
13	The Smyslov Variation	119
14	The Breyer Variation	122
15	The Chigorin Defence	127
Inde	ex of Variations	147

Symbols

check

(D)

++	double check
#	checkmate
X	capture
!!	brilliant move
!	good move
!?	interesting move
?!	dubious move
?	bad move
??	blunder
Ch	championship
Cht	team championship
Wch	world championship
Ct	candidates event
ΙZ	interzonal event
Z	zonal event
OL	olympiad
ECC	European Clubs Cup
jr	junior event
wom	women's event
mem	memorial event
rpd	rapidplay game
corr	correspondence game
qual	qualifying event
1-0	the game ends in a win for White
1/2 - 1/2	the game ends in a draw
0-1	the game ends in a win for Black
(n)	nth match game

see next diagram

Bibliography

Books

Nunn's Chess Openings, John Nunn, Graham Burgess, John Emms and Joe Gallagher (Everyman/Gambit, 1999)

Encyclopaedia of Chess Openings, Volume C (Šahovski Informator, 1997)

The Complete Spanish, Alexei Suetin (Batsford, 1991)

Mastering the Spanish, Daniel King and Pietro Ponzetto (Batsford, 1993)

The Closed Spanish: Zaitsev and Karpov Lines, Anatoly Bykhovsky (Batsford, 1993)

Ruy Lopez Breyer System, Les Blackstock (Batsford, 1976)

Spanish without ... a6, Mikhail Yudovich (Batsford, 1986)

Winning with the Schliemann, Mikhail Tseitlin (Maxwell Macmillan, 1991)

The Open Spanish, Mikhail Krasenkov (Cadogan, 1995)

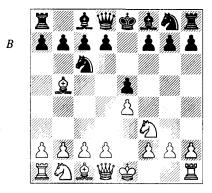
The Marshall Attack, John Nunn and Tim Harding (Batsford, 1989)

Periodicals

Informator ChessBase Magazine The Week In Chess British Chess Magazine Chess Monthly

Introduction

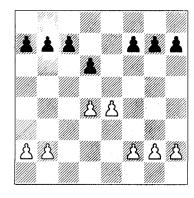
1 e4 e5 2 **2** f3 **2** c6 3 **2** b5 (D)



The Ruy Lopez (or Spanish Game, as it's often called) is a simple opening, with a simple idea. White's second and third moves have both increased the pressure on the centre, and in particular the e5-square. Give or take a few developing moves, the next stage of White's plan is to take control of the centre and increase the pressure on e5 with the advance d4, which is often supported by c3. It may be a simple enough plan, but it can be highly effective. Because of this, the Ruy Lopez has stood the test of time. Other openings come and go, drifting in and out of fashion, but the Lopez has always been a popular choice for all levels of player, from novice to World Champion, and it will continue to be.

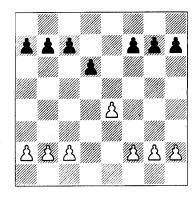
Mobile and Little Centres

If Black buckles under the pressure and relinquishes the centre with ...exd4, then depending on whether White has played c3 or not, White either obtains a Mobile Centre or a Little Centre, either of which is generally favourable to the one in possession.



This is the Mobile Centre. The pair of central pawns on e4 and d4 control many important squares and give White a space advantage plus more freedom of movement for his pieces. In addition, White has the option of creating a central breakthrough with a timely e5. This thrust could provide a platform for a successful attack on the black king.

The diagram overleaf shows the Little Centre. This pawn structure is



less dangerous for Black than the previous one, but it still favours White. The pawn on e4 is more advanced than Black's central d6-pawn, which once again means that White has more space to move his pieces. Added to this is that White also has control over the important d5- and f5-squares.

How Does Black React?

Of course Black has many different possible defences against the Lopez, but in general there are two different types of strategy. The first is to meet White's d4 advance by bolstering the e5-pawn with pawns and pieces. This plan is seen in all the closed defences (Chapters 9-15), the Classical Variation (Chapter 3), the Deferred Steinitz (Chapter 5) and the trendy Møller and Arkhangelsk Variations (Chapter 6).

Black's second strategy revolves around a swift counterattack against White's e4-pawn. This is seen in lines such as the sharp Schliemann Variation (Chapter 2), the Berlin Defence (Chapter 4) and the Open Lopez (Chapter 7).

A Real Opening

As a junior player I was quite content to play openings such as the Vienna Game, the King's Gambit and the Scotch Gambit, obtaining quick victories against the unsuspecting opponents who did not know their theory.

However, as time progressed and my opponents became more experienced, my repertoire of tricky openings just didn't seem work any more. No one was falling for my traps, and often all I was left with was a sterile equality, or something even worse.

In 1989 I appeared in the British Championship for the fourth time. Keen to make more of an impression than on my previous undistinguished attempts, I vowed that as White I would give up my 'baby openings', take a deep breath and try the Ruy Lopez. After all, it was time I grew up! My chance came in round 9, when I was paired with Scotland's top player Paul Motwani, who was a seasoned 1...e5 player. The experience was quite enlightening.

Emms - Motwani

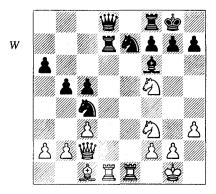
British Ch (Plymouth) 1989

1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 ②b5 a6 4 ②a4 ②f6 5 0-0 ②e7 6 □e1 b5 7 ②b3 0-0 8 c3 d6 9 h3 ②e6 10 d4 ②xb3 11 ₩xb3

In Chapter 10 I advocate 11 axb3, but in 1989 I was only just learning the theory. Still 11 wxb3 is not bad either. I was already struck by the fact that I had a perfectly good position, and even more importantly, one that was easy to play. This was just the sort of

thing I needed when confronting somebody rated 200 points higher than myself.

11...d5 12 exd5 ②a5 13 \(\text{\tint{\text{\te}\text{\texi{\texi{\text{\texi}\tint{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{



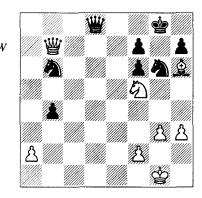
21 20g5!

As far as I could see, I hadn't played any special moves, only natural ones, yet my position was getting better and better. This was certainly a good choice of opening.

21...②g6 22 ②e4 **Ze8** 23 ②xf6+gxf6 24 **L**h6 ②xb2

Actually, I had missed this tactic, but such is the dire position of the black king, White is winning in any case. So Lopez players are even lucky!

 30 \(\psi \text{xa6 b4 31 cxb4 cxb4 32 \(\pri \text{g1}\)} \(\pri \text{df4 33 \(\psi \text{b7 \Qd5 34 g3 \Qd6 (D)}\)



35 &e3 \(\times \)d5 36 \(\times \)h6+ \(\pm \)g7 37 \(\pm \)xf7+ \(\pm \)h8 38 \(\pm \)d4 \(\times \)e5 39 \(\pm \)xe5 fxe5 40 \(\pm \)e6 \(\pm \)g7 41 \(\times \)f5+ \(\pm \)f8 42 \(\times \)d6 1-0

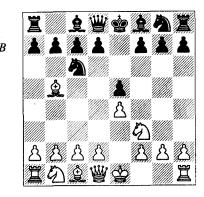
It goes without saying that after this little episode, I was converted, and I haven't strayed off the path since.

How This Book is Written

Throughout the book I have attempted to give a concise theoretical overview of the main lines of the Ruy Lopez, with a repertoire slant for the white pieces. In spite of this, I have tried to remain as objective as possible in my coverage, although as I mentioned in my earlier *Easy Guide to the Nimzo-Indian*, this can be quite difficult for a hardened advocate of one side!

1 Rare Third Moves for Black

1 e4 e5 2 2f3 2c6 3 2b5 (D)



Black has a significant number of unusual third move alternatives when faced with the Lopez. After 1 e4 e5 2 \$\overline{2}\$)f3 \$\overline{2}\$)c6 3 \$\overline{2}\$b5 we shall look at (in roughly ascending order of importance) the following moves:

A: 3...♠b4 9 B: 3...d6 10 C: 3...♠d4 12 D: 3...♠6 14 E: 3...♠ge7 16

First of all, we should look at some black moves that are considered even rarer than rare, and are a mixture of the bad and the ugly!

a) 3... **營**e7 4 0-0 **②**d8!? is an intriguing scheme of development, which

is not easily refuted. Black plans ...c6 and ...d6, while the knight may reenter the game via e6. That said, White has many ways to achieve an edge. After 5 d4 c6 I like 6 \(\frac{1}{2}\)d3 d6 7 b3!?, with ideas of \(\frac{1}{2}\)b2 or \(\frac{1}{2}\)a3.

- b) 3... Wf6 tries to make it difficult for White to achieve the d4 advance. However, the queen can become exposed on f6. One way to keep a plus is with 4 2c3 2ge7 5 d3 a6 6 2c4.
- c) 3...f6 was, unbelievably, played by Steinitz. Almost anything will do against this. 4 0-0 ②ge7 5 d4 ②g6 6 ②c3 is one way to secure an ample advantage.
- d) 3...a5!? is a bizarre move, which does have the point that 4 d3?! ②a7! 5 ②c4 b5 wins a piece, although 6 ③xf7+ ③xf7 7 ②xe5+ is still very unclear. White should probably just play 4 0-0, when 4...②a7 5 ②e2 d6 6 d4 leaves the knight looking rather silly on a7.

A)

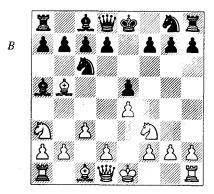
3...**≜**b4

This is another odd-looking move that was once a favourite of the Swedish grandmaster Jonny Hector. The best one could say about 3... b4 is that it's not quite as bad as it looks!

4 c3

Why not gain time on the bishop with this natural Lopez move?

4....â.a5 5 ②a3! (D)



A good move. This knight will arrive at c4, gaining more time by attacking the bishop.

5...**£**b6 6 **②**c4 d6

Or 6... 16 7 d3 d6 8 a4 a6 (8...0-0? 9 \(\) xc6 bxc6 10 a5 \(\) c5 11 b4 wins a piece) 9 \(\) xb6 cxb6 10 \(\) c4, when the bishop-pair gave White an advantage in Barlov-Velimirović, Yugoslav Ch 1994.

7 0-0 ②ge7

This knight belongs on e7 in this system. 7... 166 8 d4 exd4 9 cxd4 0-0 10 \$\frac{1}{2}\$g5 h6 11 \$\frac{1}{2}\$h4 \$\frac{1}{2}\$g4 12 \$\frac{1}{2}\$xc6 bxc6 13 e5 dxe5 14 \$\frac{1}{2}\$cxe5 gave White a clear plus in Schüssler-Lukez, Helsingborg 1990.

8 a4 0-0

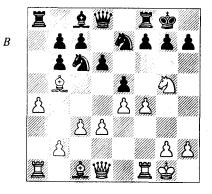
At this point there's a pitfall, of which White must be very wary. On first inspection the move 9 a5? seems to trap the black bishop, but Black has the neat trick 9... 2xa5! 10 2xa5 2xa5 11 2xa5 c6! and it's Black who

wins material. No better is 9 ≜xc6?! ②xc6 10 a5, because Black can play 10... ≜e6!.

9 d3 **≜**e6

9...d5 opens the position prematurely. In Hellers-Hector, Haninge 1990 White got a big advantage after 10 exd5 wxd5 11 Hell 2g4 12 h3 2xf3 13 wxf3 wxf3 14 gxf3 f6 15 a5 2c5 16 b4! 2xb4 17 2xc6 2xc3 18 2xb7 Hab8 19 a6 Hfd8 20 2e3.

10 ②xb6 axb6 11 ②g5 **2c8** 12 f4! (D)



Hellers-Hector, Stockholm Rilton Cup 1990/1. White's two bishops and extra space give him a clear edge.

B)

3...d6

Steinitz's Defence. This has a reputation of being quite solid, but rather passive, and it's not very popular these days. If Black wants to play lines involving an early ...d6, it's more normal to use the deferred move-order of 3...a6 4 2 a4 and only then 4...d6 (see Chapter 5).

4 d4

White has other moves, but this is the most direct way to achieve a good position.

4...**≜**d7

Not the only move. Others include:

a) 4...exd4 5 營xd4 单d7 (5...包e7 6 单g5 a6 7 单xc6+ 包xc6 8 營d2 单e7 9 包c3 单xg5 10 包xg5 0-0 11 0-0-0 gave White the usual spatial plus in Ulybin-Adams, Khalkidhiki 1992) 6 单xc6 单xc6 7 包c3 (7 单g5 单e7 8 營xg7 单f6 9 營xh8 单xh8 10 单xd8 单xb2 is not so clear) 7...包f6 8 单g5 单e7 9 0-0-0 0-0 10 單he1 單e8 11 \$\delta\$b1 with a slight advantage for White, Anderssen-Paulsen, Vienna 1873.

b) 4...\(\hat{\psi}\)g4 (Marshall's idea) 5 dxe5 dxe5 6 營xd8+ (6 營d5 營xd5 7 exd5 2xf3 8 gxf3 a6 9 dxc6 axb5 10 cxb7 Ĭb8 11 a4! b4 12 a5 Ĭxb7 13 a6 Ĭb8 14 ≜e3 was also better for White in Canfell-Wohl, Australian Ch 1991) 8 ②xe5?? allowing 8... \(\mathbb{Z} \) d1#, but 8 Dbd2, which maintains an advantage for White. One possible continuation would be 8... 2d6 9 ②c4! ②f6 (9...f6 10 **@**e3 and 9...**@**xf3 10 gxf3 **@**e7 11 \$e3 a6 12 0-0-0 are also slightly better for White) 10 \$\&\circ\$e3 \$\overline{Q}\$xe4 11 ②cxe5 &xf3 12 ②xf3, reaching a position which shows us why this line is not played by Black: everything else is equal, but Black's pawn weaknesses on the queenside are permanent.

5 0-0

This is the main line, but White can also consider ambitious ideas involving queenside castling after 5 公c3. Both 5...公f6 6 全xc6 全xc6 7 營d3

exd4 8 2xd4 2d7 9 2g5 2e7 10 0-0-0 and 5...exd4 6 2xd4 g6 7 2e3 2g7 8 \dotsday d2 2f6 9 2xc6 bxc6 10 2h6 0-011 2xg7 \dotsay xg7 12 0-0-0 \dotsday e8 13 f3 are better for White.

5...**£**16

Once again the main move, although 5...exd4 6 公xd4 g6!? is a more ambitious way of developing. After 7 公c3 全g7 8 全xc6 bxc6 the sequence 9 置e1 公e7 10 全f4 is the most annoying for Black. If then 10...0-0 White presses forward with 11 e5!, for example 11...d5 12 公a4 with a strong bind on the dark squares. Black can prevent the advance with 10...f6, but the simple plan of exchanging dark-squared bishops with 11 營d2 0-0 12 全h6 營b8 13 全xg7 含xg7 14 b3 was enough to give White an edge in J.Todorović-Yanovsky, Belgrade 1988.

6 ②c3 exd4

After 6... \$\delta\$e7 White can virtually force Black to give up the centre in any case by 7 \$\delta\$xc6 \$\delta\$xc6 8 \$\delta\$d3!. Now 8... \$\delta\$d7 9 \$\delta\$e3 exd4 10 \$\delta\$xd4 0-0 11 f4 looks good for White, so Black normally plays 8... exd4. Following 9 \$\delta\$xd4 \$\delta\$d7 White can develop aggressively with 10 b3 0-0 11 \$\delta\$b2 \$\delta\$e8 12 f4 \$\delta\$f8 13 \$\delta\$ae1. Hamdouchi-Campora, Dos Hermanas 1998 continued 13...c5 14 \$\delta\$f3 \$\delta\$c6 15 \$\delta\$d5 \$\delta\$xd5 16 exd5 h6 17 c4, when Black was struggling to find breathing room.

7 ②xd4 Qe7 8 Ze1 0-0

8...②xd4 9 歐xd4 ②xb5 10 ②xb5 0-0 11 ②f4 ②d7 12 罩ad1 a6 13 ②c3 ②f6 14 歐b4 left Black without any prospects in Hraček-Smejkal, Czech Cht 1997/8.

9 &xc6 bxc6

If Black captures with 9... 2xc6, then White should just proceed with 10 b3 and 11 2b2.

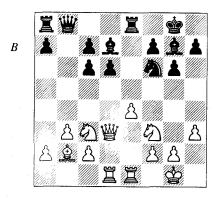
10 **쌀d**3!

More accurate than the immediate 10 b3, which allows Black to break out with 10...d5! 11 e5 ♠b4!.

10... **Ee**8 11 b3 **≜**f8 12 **≜**b2 g6

In the game Nunn-Portisch, Budapest Ct playoff (6) 1987, Black diverged with 12...c5, but after 13 ♠13 ♠c6 14 ♣ad1 h6 15 e5! White was still better.

13 ≌ad1 **≜**g7 14 h3 ₩b8 15 **△**f3 (D)



White prepares the e5 advance. In Nunn-Portisch, Budapest Ct playoff (2) 1987, White kept the advantage after 15.... 2e6 16 e5 2d5 17 2e4 2f5 18 c4.

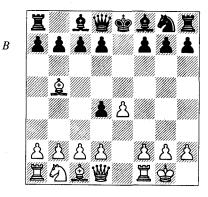
C)

3...Ød4

This defence was invented in the nineteenth century by the English master Henry Bird. The idea is to

leave the Lopez bishop hitting thin air on b5. Bird's Defence has never really caught on, however, probably because Black moves his knight twice in the opening, just to see it exchanged.

4 ②xd4 exd4 5 0-0 (D)



At this point Black has two serious options:

C1: 5...c6 12 C2: 5...\(\delta\)c5 13

After 5... 2e7 White should continue with 6 d3 c6 7 2e4 d5 8 2d2, e.g. 8...dxe4 9 2xe4 2f5 10 2b3 2e7 11 2b5, with some advantage, Petrosian-Süer, Varna OL 1962.

C1)

5...c6

Immediately putting the question to the white bishop. This line is less popular than 5... ♠ c5.

6 &c4 d5

Another way for Black to play is 6...包f6 7 單e1 d6 8 c3 包g4 9 h3 包e5 10 d3 包xc4 11 dxc4 dxc3 12 包xc3 全e7 13 全f4 0-0 14 營d3, when Black's

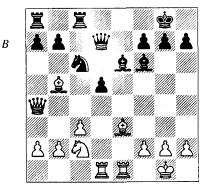
weak pawn on d6 gave White an edge in Matanović-Gliksman, Yugoslav Ch 1967.

7 exd5 cxd5 8 \(\mathbb{Z} e1 + \(\infty e7 \)

The more natural 8... cdot e7 allows 9 cdot b5+, when 9... cdot d7 runs into 10 cdot g4! so Black is forced to play the ugly 9... cdot f8.

9 \(\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\geq}\$} 11 \(\text{\$\geq}\$ a3 \(\text{\$\geq}\$ c6 \) 12 \(\text{\$\geq} a4 \(\text{\$\geq}\$ e7 13 \(\text{\$\geq}\$ c2 \(\text{\$\geq}\$ f6 \)

Forced, as 13...0-0 14 \(\times \text{xd4} \(\times \text{xd4} \)
15 \(\times \text{xd7} \(\times \text{xd7} \) 16 \(\times \text{xe7} \(\times \text{C2} \) 17 \(\times \text{b1} \)
2f5 18 d3 is clearly better for White.



This position arose in Geller-Klaman, Moscow 1949. The pressure against Black's isolated d-pawn gives White a very pleasant game.

C2)

5....\delta c5

This is the main line of Bird's Defence. Black develops a piece and waits for White to commit himself before attacking the bishop.

6 d3 c6 7 **Q**a4

In this line the bishop is better placed on a4, out of the way of any ...d5 breaks from Black.

7...9e7

More recently, Black has been experimenting with 7...d6, giving the knight the option of going to f6. This idea works after 8 f4 f5!? 9 2d2 2f6! 10 e5 dxe5 11 fxe5 2g4, when Black has succeeded in reaching a playable position. However, White should play more craftily with 8 2b3!, planning to meet 8...2f6 with the pinning 9 2g5!. If Black reverts to 8...2e7, then White also reverts to the original plan with 9 f4!, leading to lines similar to the main text.

8 f4!

This powerful move has done a great deal of damage to the reputation of Bird's Defence.

8...f5

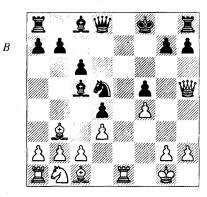
This move is virtually forced. Failure to prevent White's f5 thrust can result in a grim position, e.g. 8...d5 9 f5 f6 (9...0-0 10 f6! is even worse) 10 營h5+ 含f8 11 含h1 全d7 12 c3 全e8 13 營h4 dxe4 14 dxe4 營b6 15 全b3 全f7 16 ②d2 dxc3 17 bxc3 and Black is in big trouble, Kindermann-Tatai, Budapest 1987.

9 \(\text{\hat{b}}\) d5 10 exd5 \(\text{\hat{D}}\) xd5 11 \(\text{\hat{E}}\) e1+ \(\text{\hat{g}}\) f8

11...含f7 is no better. White continues 12 包d2 置e8 (NCO gives 12...g6 13 包f3 含g7 14 全xd5 豐xd5 15 置e5 豐d6 16 b4! 全xb4 17 全b2 with a clear advantage, as 17...c5 18 a3 全a5 fails to 19 置xc5!) 13 豐h5+ 含f8 14 罩xe8+ 豐xe8 15 豐xe8+ 含xe8 16 全xd5 cxd5 17 包f3 全d7 18 b3 罩c8 19 全b2 全b6

20 \(\mathbb{Z}\)c1 and the d4-pawn is ripe for picking.

12 **省h5!** (D)



Black's airy king position is a major cause for concern. Kamsky-Ivanchuk, Tilburg 1990 continued 12...g6 13 營h6+ 会g8 14 公d2 全f8 15 營h3 全g7 16 公f3 h6 17 公e5 營f6 18 全xd5+cxd5 19 b3! 全h7 20 全b2 營b6 21 營f3 置e8 22 營f2 全xe5 23 置xe5 置xe5 24 全xd4 置e2 25 全xb6 置xf2 26 全xf2 and White had achieved a winning endgame.

D)

3...g6

This quiet positional move has been favoured by former World Champions Spassky and Smyslov. White can now play 4 c3, when Black's best reaction would be to transpose to Chapter 5 with 4...a6 5 全a4 d6 6 d4 全d7. Attempts to do without ...a6 give White more options, for example 4...d6 5 d4 全d7 6 曾b3! 全a5 7 曾a4 c6 8 全e2 b5 9 曾c2 全g7 10 0-0 全e7 11 dxe5 dxe5 12 a4, leading to an edge for White,

Dolmatov-Kholmov, Sochi 1988. However, as well as 4 c3 White can play in a more direct fashion with...

4 d4!? exd4

4...②xd4 5 ②xd4 exd4 6 營xd4 營f6 7 e5 is very favourable for White, e.g. 7...營b6 8 營xb6 axb6 9 ②c3 ②b4 10 ②d2 罩a5 11 a4 c6 12 ②e4! ②xd2+13 含xd2 ②h6 14 b4 罩a8 15 ②d6+含e7 16 ②d3 with an overwhelming position, Kasparov-Garcia Santos, Galicia simul 1991.

5 **≜g**5 **≜e**7

Of course, Black cannot continue 5... ②ge7, due to 6 \(\exists \)f6. The alternative to 5...\(\exists e7\) is 5...f6, when White keeps the advantage after 6 \$\frac{1}{2}\$h4 \$\frac{1}{2}\$g7 7 0-0 Øge7 8 2c4 Øa5 9 ₩xd4 Øec6 10 曾d5 ②xc4 11 曾xc4 d6 12 ②c3 **2**g4 13 ②d4 ②xd4 (not 13... ②e5? 14 豐b5+!) 14 豐xd4. Now Nunn-Davies, Hastings 1987/8 continued 14...0-0?! 15 f4 Wd7 16 h3 \(\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\geq}}}\) 6 17 f5! gxf5 18 exf5 2xf5 19 2d5 and White's attack was much too strong. 14...g5 is a more resolute defence, when 15 2xg5? fails to 15...c5 16 營a4+ Qd7 17 公b5 營b6. However, White can keep a small plus with 15 \(\hat{\text{g}} \) g3 h5 16 h3 \(\hat{\text{e}} \) e6 17 f4.

6 ≜xe7 (D)

Now Black has two options:

D1: 6...₩xe7 14

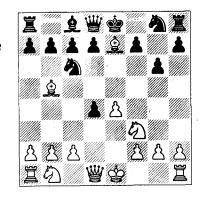
D2: 6...**②gxe7** 15

D1)

6...₩xe7 7 **Q**xc6 dxc6

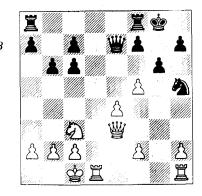
The greedy 7... 數64+ is punished by 8 c3 數xb2 9 數xd4 數xa1 10 0-0 f6 11 e5! dxc6 12 exf6, when White's attack comes crashing through.

8 \wxd4 \Qf6 9 \Qc3 \Qg4



In Sax-Smyslov, New York 1987, White built up a menacing kingside attack after 9...0-0 10 0-0-0 2e6 11 h3 2fd8 12 2e3 b5 13 2e5 2d7 14 f4 2e8 15 g4 a5 16 g5 2h5 17 2g4 b4 18 2a4. In particular, Black suffers because his queenside pawns are less mobile, a perennial problem of the doubled pawn complex.

10 0-0-0 **2**xf3 11 gxf3 0-0 12 **2**e3 **2**h5 13 f4 b6 14 f5 (D)



Luther-Dautov, Bad Lauterberg 1991. White's initiative on the kingside gives him the advantage.

D2)

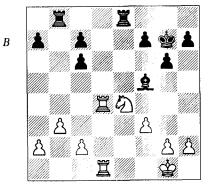
6... 2gxe7 7 2xd4 d5

Delaying this for a move with 7...0-0 8 2c3 d5 doesn't change the assessment of the position. White can keep an advantage after both 9 2xc6 bxc6 10 2b3! dxe4 11 2xe4 and the simple 9 2xc6 bxc6 10 2d3 2b8 11 b3.

8 ②c3 dxe4 9 ②xc6+ ②xc6 10 ②xc6 ₩xd1+ 11 ℤxd1 bxc6 12 ②xe4 ②f5 13 0-0! 0-0

After 13.... 全xe4 14 單fe1 f5 15 f3 單d8 16 fxe4 f4 17 罩xd8+ 全xd8 18 全f2 全e7 19 單d1 g5 20 全f3 h5 21 單d4 單b8 22 b3 Black's queenside weaknesses proved fatal in Wahls-Zsu.Polgar, Dortmund 1990.

14 \(\mathbb{I} \)d4 \(\psi \)g7 15 f3 \(\mathbb{I} \)fe8 16 \(\mathbb{I} \)fd1 \(\mathbb{I} \)ab8 17 b3 \((D) \)



Black's weak a- and c-pawns make this endgame rather uncomfortable for him. Nunn-Salov, Skellefteå World Cup 1989 continued 17...單b5 18 單c4 單d5 19 單d3 單e6 20 掌f2 h6 21 罩a4 全xe4 22 罩xe4 掌f6 and now 23 掌e3 would have kept a clear advantage.

E)

3...**©**ge7

This move was briefly popular in the late 1980s, when it was used by grandmasters such as Ivan Sokolov and Alexei Dreev. Black's idea is to follow up with ...g6, ... ≥ g7 and a later ...d5. Here we look at two alternatives for White:

E1: 4 \(\text{\alpha} \c 3! \)? 16
E2: 4 \(\c 3 \) 16

E1)

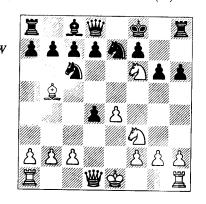
4 ②c3!?

A tricky move, against which Black must defend very carefully.

4...g6

If 4...②g6 White should open the position with 5 d4 exd4 6 ②xd4. Following 6...②c5 7 ②e3 ③xd4 8 ③xd4 0-0 9 ②e3 d6 10 0-0 ⑤h8 11 營d2 f5 12 f4 fxe4 13 ②xe4 營e7 14 ②g3 White was better in Barczay-Sydor, Lublin 1969.

5 d4 exd4 6 ②d5! **\$g7** 7 **\$g5** h6 Forced, as 8 **\$xc6** was threatened. 8 **\$f6 \$xf6** 9 ②xf6+ **\$f8** (D)



10 ②xd4

Perhaps White should consider the untried 10 \(\mathbb{\mathbb{W}}d2!\)? here. The point is to meet 10...\(\mathbb{\mathbb{Q}}g7\) with 11 \(\Delta xd4!\), transposing to the next note. 10...\(\Delta f5\) 11 \(\Delta d5\) \(\Delta g7\) 12 \(\Delta f4\) \(\Delta e6\) 13 \(\Delta xe6+\) dxe6 14 \(\Delta 0-0-0\) favours White, as does 10...\(\delta 5\) 11 \(\Delta xc6\) \(\Delta xc6\) 12 \(\Delta xc6\) This leaves us with 10...\(\delta 6\), but here 11 \(\Delta xd4\) \(\Delta f5\) 12 \(\Delta xc6\) \(\mathbb{\mathbb{W}}xf6\) 13 \(\mathbb{e}xf5\) bxc6 14 \(\Delta xc6\) may give White an edge. This line needs a practical test.

10...**包f5**!

Murey-Dreev, Moscow 1989 continued 10... \$ g7, which White met by the shocking 11 對d2!. Dreev continued weakly with 11... \$ g8 12 包d5 包f6 13 包c3 包h5 14 g4, when White had an overwhelming position. However, grabbing the knight with 11... \$ xf6 also gives White an irresistible attack after 12 對c3, e.g. 12... ②c5 13 f4 d6 14 fxe5+ dxe5 15 0-0-0!, or 12... ②xd4 13 對xd4+ \$ c6 14 \$ c4+ d5 15 exd5+\$ d7 16 0-0-0 a6 17 d6!.

11 ②h7+!?

Black is fine after 11 exf5 營xf6 12 全xc6 dxc6 13 fxg6 含g7!, preparing ... 查d8.

11... 互xh7 12 exf5 豐f6 13 盒xc6 dxc6 14 0-0 c5

Emms-Twyble, London 1998. Now White should play 15 包b5!? 鱼xf5 16 ②xc7 罩d8 17 豐f3 豐xb2 18 罩ab1 豐xc2 19 罩xb7 with good compensation for the pawn.

E2)

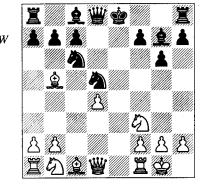
4 c3 g6

4...a6 5 \ a4 d6 6 d4 \ d7 transposes to Chapter 5.

5 0-0 \(\dot{\Omega}\)g7 6 d4 exd4

Black gives up the centre, but plans to strike back immediately. 6...0-0 7 d5 a6 8 2e2 2a7 9 c4 is obviously better for White.

7 cxd4 d5 8 exd5 ②xd5 (D)



9 **⊉**g5

In my opinion this is more accurate than 9 罩e1+ 鱼e6 10 鱼xc6+ bxc6 11 鱼g5, which may transpose, but unnecessarily gives Black the added option of 11... 數8!?.

9... ৬d6 10 至e1+ 鱼e6 11 包bd2 0-0 12 包e4 數b4 13 鱼xc6 bxc6 14 數c1! 至fe8 15 鱼d2 數b6

15...豐b5 16 包e5 皇f5 17 包c5 (NCO) also gives White an edge.

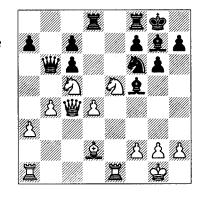
16 ②c5 ዿf5 17 ②e5 **Z**ad8

Giving up the dark squares with 17.... xe5? is not to be recommended. After 18 dxe5 b4 19 g5 c2 20 d7! xc2 1 wc2 Black has chronic weaknesses around his king.

18 a3 �f6 19 ₩c4 ℤf8

19... **≜**e6? fails to 20 **△**xe6 **≝**xe6 21 **△**xf7!.

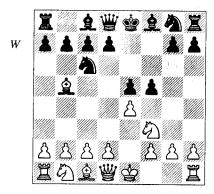
20 b4 (D)



Donchev-Radulov, Bulgaria 1991. I prefer White's active knights to Black's bishop-pair.

2 The Schliemann Variation

1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 **\$**b5 f5 (D)



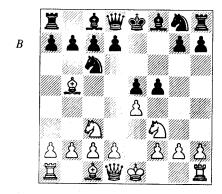
The Schliemann Variation is probably the sharpest way of meeting the Ruy Lopez. Black immediately goes on the counterattack in the centre, in King's Gambit fashion. Most positional considerations are overtaken by tactics and hard variations, so there's much more homework for the student here than in many of the other chapters. That said, a well-prepared player on the white side could certainly look forward to facing the Schliemann. After all, this line is fun for White too, but only if you know your stuff!

The Schliemann is quite popular at club level, where many white players refuse to take up the challenge and opt out with the passive 4 d3. However, this is just the type of move Schliemann players would enjoy playing

against, as Black is put under no immediate pressure and has been able to 'get away with' his third move. After, for instance, 4...fxe4 5 dxe4 \$\Delta\$f6, Black already has a comfortable development plan and White no longer has a d-pawn! Instead of this, White must try to punish Black for his sins and thus I'm recommending the critical reply 4 \$\Delta\$c3!.

The Theory of the Schliemann

1 e4 e5 2 **2** f3 **2** c6 3 **2** b5 f5 4 **2** c3! (D)



Black has three main options:

A: 4...**2**f6 19 B: 4...**2**d4 19

C: 4...fxe4 21

A) 4...包f6

On first impression this looks the most natural follow-up, but in fact it's not very popular due to the strength of White's reply.

5 exf5!

Whereas 4 exf5?! e4! would have embarrassed the knight, now 5...e4 can be effectively met by 6 \(\text{Dh4!}\). After 6...d5 7 d3 \(\text{Qe7}\) 8 dxe4 dxe4 9 \(\text{Wxd8+} \) \(\text{Qxd8} \) 10 \(\text{Qg5}\) 0-0 11 0-0-0 White is simply a pawn to the good. If 5...\(\text{Dd4}\) White should simply snatch another pawn with 6 \(\text{Qxe5}\), when 6...c67 \(\text{Qd3}\) d5 8 0-0 \(\text{Qd6}\) 9 \(\text{Qf3}\) \(\text{Qxf5}\) 11 \(\text{Ze1+} \) \(\text{Qe7}\) 12 \(\text{We2}\) was clearly better for White in Chandler-Hermann, Bundesliga 1995/6, while 6...\(\text{Qc5}\) 7 0-0 0-0 transposes to the main line of this section.

5...**.e**c5 6 0-0 0-0 7 **②**xe5 **②**d4

Black's only chance to complicate, as 7... 2xe5 8 d4 is clearly in White's favour.

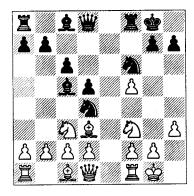
8 \(\text{d} \) d3 d5 9 \(\text{D} \) f3 c6

White is also a safe pawn up after 9...€\xf5 10 \(\Delta\xf5\)\(\Delta\xf5 \(\Delta\xf5\)\(\Delta\xf5 \(\Delta\xf5\)\(\Delta\xf

10 h3! (D)

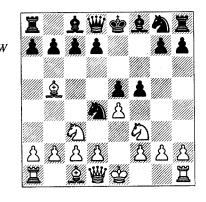
Stronger than 10 b3?! ②xf5 11 ②xf5 ②xf5 12 d4 ②b4, when Black has some compensation for the pawn.

After 10 h3!, Ulybin-O.Rodriguez, Benasque 1992 continued 10...\(\Delta\delta?! 11 \(\Delta\xd4 \Delta\xd4 12 \Delta e2 \Delta b6 13 c3 \Delta e5 14 \Delta c2 d4 15 cxd4 \Delta xd4 16 \Delta xd4 \Delta xd4 17 d3 \Delta xf5 18 \Delta e3 \Delta h4 19 f4! and White held a clear advantage. The straightforward 10...\(\Delta\xf5 \Delta xf5 \Delta xf5 \Delta xf5 \Delta xf5 \Delta xf5



12 d4 ♠d6 13 ᡚe5 ᡚe4 14 ᡚe2 Black doesn't have enough compensation.

B) 4...②d4!? (D)



A deceptively tricky move, which was first suggested by Alekhine. Black seems to break all the opening rules by following up 3...f5 with moving his one developed piece again, but 4... at 100 dt 2 is not as bad as it first looks, and should be treated with considerable care.

5 ⊈c4!

Of course White has other playable moves, including 5 exf5 and 5 \(\Delta a4. but this one asks Black the most questions; for example: where will he castle?

5...c6

Other moves for Black include:

- a) 5...d6 6 d3 \(\int \) f6 (6...\(\int e7 7 \) \(\int xg8 \) 翼xg8 8 ②xd4 exd4 9 對h5+ 含f8 10 2d5 looks good for White) 7 2xd4! exd4 8 2 e2 fxe4 9 dxe4 2 xe4 (9...c5 10 0-0 ②xe4 11 ②f4 is clearly better for White) 10 \widetilde{\Pi}xd4 \&\tilde{\Omega}f6 11 \omega_g5 and White's lead in development had reached nearly decisive proportions in Abramović-Kovačević, Yugoslav Ch 1985.
- b) 5...\$\Delta f6 6 d3 (6 0-0 \$\Delta xf3+! 7 ₩xf3 fxe4 8 ②xe4 c6 is less clear) 6... ②xf3+7 \(\mathbb{U}\)xf3 f4 8 g3 g5 9 gxf4 gxf4 10 \(\Delta\)xf4! exf4 11 e5 \(\Delta\)b4 12 0-0-0 &xc3 13 bxc3 營e7 14 exf6 營xf6 15 \(\mathbb{Z}\)de1+\(\delta\)de 16 \(\mathbb{Z}\)e4 and White was clearly better in Tošić-Šahović, Vrnjačka Banja 1982.

6 0-0 d6

Black can also offer to sacrifice material with 6... 2f6. Emms-Tebb. British Ch (Norwich) 1994 continued 7 d3!? ②xf3+8 \wxf3 f4 9 \&xf4!? exf4 10 e5 d5 11 exf6 豐xf6 12 置fe1+ d8 13 ②xd5 cxd5 14 ② xd5 \(\mathbb{Z}\) b8 15 d4 with a very unclear position. Instead of 7 d3, White should grab the material on offer with 7 2 xe5 fxe4 8 5 f7 \cdot\cap c7 9 ②xh8. After 9...d5 10 \(\extreme{1} \) e2 \(\extreme{1} \) d6 11 h3 ₫f5 12 d3 it's difficult to believe Black has enough compensation.

7 exf5!

Sensibly opening the position up. Instead 7 罩e1 分xf3+ 8 豐xf3 f4 9 d4

₩f6 gives Black the type of position he wants, where the f4-pawn cramps the white pieces.

7...**⊈**xf5

Easy Guide to the Ruy Lopez

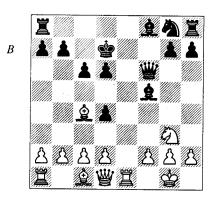
Once more Black has some other options:

- a) 7...d5 8 2xe5 2f6 9 1e1 2e7 10 \(\Delta d3 \) 0-0 11 \(\Delta e2 \) \(\Delta xf5 \) 12 \(\Delta xf5 \) ♠xf5 13 d4 leads to a typically advantageous position for White, who is a pawn up and can boast an outpost for the knight on e5.
- b) 7... 2xf5 8 d4 and now 8...exd4 9 **E**e1+ **2**e7 10 **②**xd4 is clearly better for White, while 8...d5 runs into 9 ②xe5! dxc4 10 Wh5+ g6 11 ②xg6 ②f6 12 賞e2+ 夕e7 13 夕xh8
- c) $7...9 \times f3 + 8 \text{ w} \times f3 \text{ w} f6 9 d4$ exd4 10 罩e1+ 當d8 11 ②e4 營xf5 12 ₩g3 gives White a clear plus, according to NCO.

8 ②xd4 exd4 9 \(\mathbb{Z}\)e1+ \(\phi\)d7

Black has problems defending his d4-pawn after 9... **2**e7 10 **2**e2.

10 包e2 響f6 11 包g3 (D)



We have been following Timman-Danov, Wijk aan Zee 1971, which continued 11... Ee8 12 Exe8 \$xe8 13 we2+ \$d7 14 c3 dxc3 15 dxc3, when White had a big lead in development.

C)

4...fxe4

Black's main continuation. The epawn is eliminated and Black prepares to occupy the centre, for one move at least!

5 6)xe4

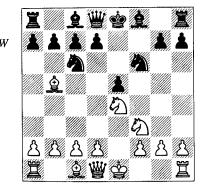
Now we deal with Black's two main choices:

C1: 5... 2 f6 21

22 C2: 5...d5

C1)

5... ②f6 (D)



This line was unpopular for a long time, as White can virtually win a pawn by force by 6 \(\Delta xf6+\) \(\mathbb{W} xf6 7 \) We2. However, ways were then discovered of drumming up counterplay for Black.

6 ②xf6+

When improvements for Black were being discovered in this line, White

started to try 6 We2!?, but my impression is that Black's resources are sufficient in this line after 6...d5 7 2xf6+ gxf6 8 d4 \(\textit{\textit{g}} g7 9 \) dxe5 0-0! 10 \(\textit{\text{\text{g}}} xc6 \) bxc6 11 e6 **≝**e8 12 0-0 c5.

6...₩xf6

6...gxf6? is a mistake. After 7 d4 豐e7 (or 7...e4 8 包g5!) 8 0-0 e4 9 d5! crushing position in Emms-Sylvan, Copenhagen 1992.

7 響e2 皇e7 8 皇xc6 dxc6

8... 對xc6 9 對xe5 leaves Black struggling to castle, but 8...bxc6 is quite interesting. White should continue with 9 2 xe5, when 9...c5 10 0-0 **a**b7 11 b3 0-0-0 12 **a**b2 was better for White in J.Diaz-Antunes, Santa Clara 1991, while 9...0-0 10 0-0 \(\frac{1}{2}\)d6 11 d4 c5 12 \(\text{\ti}}}}}}} \ext{\tex{ 14 dxe5 \widetilde{\psi}xe5 15 \widetilde{\psi}xc5 also leaves White a clear pawn up.

9 ∮\xe5 **£**f5

With this move Black keeps his options open regarding which side to castle. The other main line runs 9...0-0 10 0-0 \(\text{\$\delta} \) d6 11 d4 \(\text{\$\delta} \) f5 (11...c5 12 **幽g4 罩ae8 16 罩ad1 gave White the** advantage in Kuporosov-Yandemirov, USSR 1986) 12 c3!? (12 f4 2xe5 13 dxe5 \mathbb{\ position after Black's 15th move in Marjanović-Yilmaz, discussed in the next note) and now:

a) 12... \(\mathbb{Z}\) ae8 13 \(\mathbb{Q}\) f4 \(\mathbb{Q}\) xe5 (not 13... ad3?! 14 \wxd3 \wxf4, allowing was clearly better for White in the game Dervishi-Khachian, Panormo Z 1998.

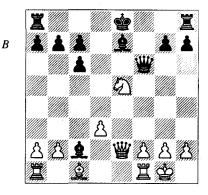
b) 12...c5 13 \(\Delta f4 \) \(\Delta ae8 14 \) \(\Delta fe1 \) cxd4 \(\Delta e6 16 \) \(\Delta g3 \) gave White an edge in Kotronias-Vouldis, Greek Ch 1992.

10 0-0!?

This move has hardly been seen, but it could well be the most testing move-order for Black. After 10 d4 Black obtains sufficient counterplay with 10...0-0-0 11 \(\extrm{\$\text{e}}\)e3 \(\extrm{\$\text{d}}\)6 12 f4 £xe5 13 dxe5 ₩g6. Another commonly played move for White is 10 d3. Now 10...0-0-0 11 0-0 The8 12 f4 **2**d6 13 **当**f2! **\$**b8 14 **2**e3 gave White a clear plus in Glek-Arbakov, corr 1985. However, Black can switch back to 10...0-0!, underlining the flexibility of 9...\$15. Following 11 0-0 2d6 12 f4 Zae8 13 d4 2xe5 14 dxe5 ₩g6 15 \(\mathbb{I} \)f2 \(\mathbb{I} \)d8 we reach a position typical for this line. Despite White's two-pawn majority on the kingside, the presence of opposite-coloured bishops makes it extremely difficult for White to convert his small advantage. After 16 \(\preceq\)e3 \(\preceq\)d5 17 a4 a5 18 afl h5 19 \text{\center} h1 h4 20 h3 \text{\textsfd8} Black had enough play in Marjanović-Yilmaz, Kavala 1985.

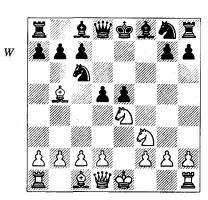
The point of 10 0-0!? is to answer 10...0-0-0 with 11 d3, as in Glek-Arbakov, and 10...0-0 with 11 d4, leading to the note to Black's 9th move. Of course Black does have another option, which is to grab the hot pawn.

10...\(\hat{\omega}\) xc2!? 11 d3 (D)



Hessen 1988. 11...\$\overline{a}4\$ is a tougher defence, but White's initiative still seems quite daunting, for example 12 b3 (12 \$\overline{a}g4\$ \$\overline{w}f5\$ 13 b3 \$\overline{a}b5\$ 14 \$\overline{a}a3\$ 0-0! shows the defensive resources in Black's position) 12...\$\overline{a}b5\$ 13 \$\overline{a}b2\$ and now 13...0-0-0? allows 14 \$\overline{w}g4+, while 13...0-0 runs into 14 \$\overline{a}d7\$. Perhaps Black can play 13...\$\overline{w}e6\$, but after 14 \$\overline{a}fe1\$ there are still problems to solve. Certainly, this line could do with a practical test.

C2) 5...d5 (D)



This move leads to the most heavily analysed variations of the Schliemann. Play becomes extremely sharp and both sides must know their theory. After 5...d5, White has the option of retreating the knight with 6 ②3, a perfectly playable, though hardly critical reply. However, my recommendation is to play straight into the main line with...

6 ②xe5! dxe4 7 ②xc6

Now Black has three possible continuations:

C21: 7...bxc6 23 C22: 7...\dd5 24

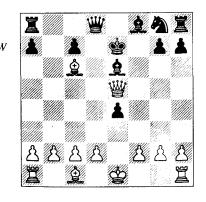
C23: 7...\seg5 25

C21)

7...bxc6

The least popular move. White can achieve a clear advantage in more than one way.

8 &xc6+ &d7 9 ₩h5+ &e7 10 ₩e5+ &e6 (D)



11 f4!?

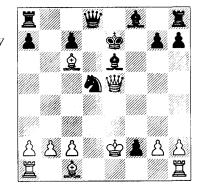
This is the critical move, although a safe plus can be achieved by the simple

- 11 皇xa8 營xa8 12 營xc7+ 全e8 13 0-0 皇e7 14 d3 exd3 15 cxd3, when White's rook and three pawns outweigh the two minor pieces.

11...exf3

11...②h6 12 f5 ②xf5 13 罩f1 is very strong, e.g. 13...徵d6 (13...②h6?? 14 徵c5+ 徵d6 15 徵g5#) 14 徵xe4 (14 徵xd6+ 含xd6 15 ②xa8 c6 also looks favourable for White) 14...罩b8 15 罩xf5 罩b4 16 d4! 徵xd4 17 ②g5+ 含d6 18 ②f4+ 含e7 19 徵xd4 罩xd4 20 ②e3 ②xf5 21 ②xd4 and White is clearly better.

12 d4 ②f6 13 d5 f2+ 14 \$\pmeq\$e2 ②xd5 (D)



15 **E**d1!

I believe this is the most effective way to reach a clear plus. 15 鱼g5+ is less clear after 15... ②f6 16 單hd1 豐c8 17 單d7+ (17 鱼xa8 豐xa8 18 鱼xf6+ gxf6 19 豐xc7+ �e8 is also a mess) 17... 豐xd7 18 鱼xd7 �exd7 19 豐b5+ �e7 20 �exf2 �ef7 and Black was not worse in Kovalevsky-Lubarsky, USSR 1968.

15...**營d**6

15...含f7 16 盒xd5 盒xd5 17 營f5+ 含e8 18 罩xd5 wins for White, while 15...②c3+ 16 營xc3 營xd1+ 17 含xf2 營d6 18 盒xa8 營xh2 19 盒g5+ is also strong.

16 營xd6+ 含xd6 17 全xd5 全xd5 18 c4 c6 19 全f4+ 含e6 20 cxd5+ cxd5 21 置ac1

This endgame is most unpleasant for Black.

C22)

White may also play 9 對h5+ g6 10 對e5+ 對xe5 11 ②xe5+ c6 12 皇a4, although after 12...皇g7! 13 d4 exd3 Black seems to have enough counterchances, e.g. 14 皇f4 ②f6 15 0-0-0 皇f5 16 ②xd3 0-0-0 17 皇c2 單d4 18 皇e3 單xc4 and Black is fine, or 14 0-0 皇f5 (14...皇xe5? 15 罩e1! is better for White) 15 罩e1 0-0-0 16 皇g5 (16 ②f7 d2 17 皇xd2 罩xd2 18 罩e8+ \rightarrow d7 19 罩ae1 罩xb2 is better for Black) 16...d2 17 罩e3 罩f8 and Mikhail Tseitlin favours Black.

Much more critical than 11 2b5 2f6 12 0-0 2c5, which gives Black good play for the two-pawn deficit.

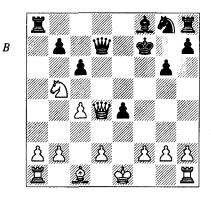
11...g6

11...曾d8 favours White after 12 曾a5! 會e8 13 0-0 句f6 14 d4 exd3 15 皇e3.

12 營e5+ 含f7 13 公b5!

Capturing the black rook immediately by 13 wxh8 is dangerous in view of 13... 2f6 14 2b5 c6 15 2c3 Ze8, when White must give up his queen in less favourable circumstances.

13...c6 14 \(\exists d4 (D)\)



14...₩e7

Black chooses complications over an inferior endgame, which he gets with either alternative:

- a) 14... \(\bar{L} d8 \) 15 \(\bar{W} xd7 + \bar{L} xd7 \) 16 \(\Delta c3 \) \(\Delta f6 \) 17 b3 favours White.
- b) 14... \(\mathbb{W}\)xd4 15 \(\Delta\)xd4 \(\Delta\)g7 16 \(\Delta\)e2 \(\Delta\)a4 17 b3 \(\Delta\)xc4 18 bxc4 \(\Delta\)xa1 19 0-0 and again White is better.

15 **₩xh8**

Grabbing the rook must be correct. Black has enough counterplay after 15 ②c3 ②f6 16 豐e3 罩d8.

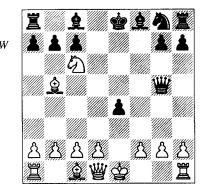
15... 16 16 b3 **Ad8**

16...單e8 17 单b2 单g7 18 单a3! c5 19 豐xe8+ 包xe8 20 單d1 is much better for White than the main variation, as the d5-square beckons as an important outpost.

17 息b2 息g7 18 息a3 營d7 19 ②d6+ \$e6 20 營xd8 營xd8 21 ②xb7 營c7 22 ②c5+ \$f7 23 \$b2

But not 23 0-0 20g4!. After 23 262 White's two rooks and three pawns should overcome the black queen. In Todorov-Boudre, Cannes 1997, White

C23) 7...營g5 (D)



The main line. This move was given a boost when it was adopted by Jon Speelman in a 1989 Candidates match against Jan Timman. Speelman reached a level position and went on to win the game. Since then, however, new ideas have been found for White, and Black is once more struggling to equalize.

8 營e2 包f6

8... **当**xg2?? loses to 9 **当**h5+ **含**d7 (or 9...g6 10 **当**e5+ **\$**d7 11 **日**b8+ **\$**d8 12 **当**e8#) 10 **当**f7+.

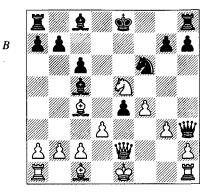
9 f4

Now we have a further branch:

C231: 9...\w\delta\h4+ 25 C232: 9...\w\xf4 26

C231)

9...₩h4+ 10 g3 ₩h3 11 ②e5+ c6 12 ②c4 ②c5 13 d3! (D) 13 c3 is also feasible, but I prefer to prepare queenside castling as soon as possible.



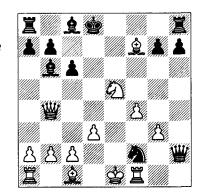
13...**∮**]g4

Black has to continue actively. After 13...exd3? 14 \(\delta\)xd3 0-0 15 \(\delta\)d2, followed by 0-0-0, White is winning.

14 營xe4! 包f2 15 息f7+ 含d8

15...\$ loses to 16 \$ c4 b6 17 \$ f1, while White also keeps a clear advantage after 15...\$ c7 16 \$ c4 \$ b6 17 \$ f1 \$ c5 18 \$ c5 19 \$ c

16 \(\text{\psi} \cdot 2 \text{\psi} \text{b6} 17 \(\text{\psi} \text{f1} \(\text{\psi} \text{xh2} 18 \(\text{\psi} \text{b4} \((D) \)

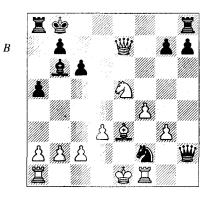


18...**⊈**f5

18...含c7 won quickly for White in Konikowski-Roose, corr 1974, after 19 全e3 ②g4 20 全xb6+ axb6 21 豐e7+ 含b8 22 0-0-0 豐xg3 23 豐d6+ 含a7 24 罩f3!.

19 營d6+ 全c8 20 皇e6+ 皇xe6 21 營xe6+ 全b8 22 營e7 a5 23 皇e3! (D)

23 營xg7 is not so clear in view of 23... 含a7 24 ②xc6+ 含a6!.



NCO stops here with an assessment of 'clearly better for White', but perhaps we should look a little further. After the forced sequence 23...皇xe3 24 ②xc6+ bxc6 25 營xe3 White has a strong attack for the piece, for example:

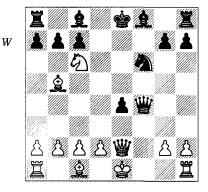
- a) 25... ②g4 26 營b6+ 全c8 27 營xc6+ 全b8 28 營b6+ 全c8 29 0-0-0 and now 29... 營xg3 loses to 30 營c6+ 全b8 31 宣f3 營g2 32 d4! and the rook swings across decisively.
- b) 25... ②xd3+ (returning the sacrificed piece looks to be Black's best chance) 26 cxd3 (26 豐xd3 置e8+ 27 全d1 全c7 is unclear) 26... 豐xb2 and now 27 豐e5+ 豐xe5+ 28 fxe5 gives

White an endgame advantage, while White could also consider 27 \(\mathbb{Z} \)c1!?.

C232)

9...₩xf4 (D)

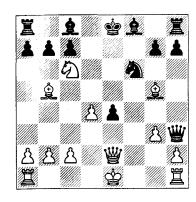
This is Black's most popular move.



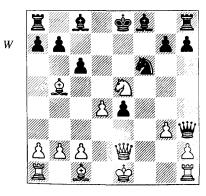
10 ②e5+

10 d4!? is an underrated idea. Kamsky-Piket, Groningen 1995 continued 10... 對d6 11 包e5+ c6 12 鱼c4 鱼e6 (12... 對xd4 13 鱼f7+ 鱼e7 14 鱼f4 looks too dangerous for Black) 13 c3 鱼xc4 14 包xc4 對e6 15 0-0 (Kamsky gives 15 鱼f4 as a good alternative) 15...鱼e7 16 鱼g5 0-0 17 墨ae1 and White was slightly better. Of course Black could try to steer the game back to the main line with 10... 對h4+ 11 g3 對h3. Now 12 包e5+ c6 13 鱼c4 would transpose to the main line, but White could also try the little-played 12 鱼g5!? (D).

This move does have some pedigree, as it was played by Fischer in a blitz game, and it does seem to cause Black problems. Fischer-Matulović, Herceg Novi blitz 1970 continued



10...c6 11 d4 \widethat{4} h4+ 12 g3 \widethat{4} h3 (D)



13 **Q** c4 **Q** e6

14 \(\overline{9}\)f4!?

The alternative 14 \(\textstyle g5 \) lost some of its popularity after the Timman-Speelman game, but it should still give Black problems. After 14...0-0-0 15 0-0-0 \(\textstyle d6 \) White can try the interesting 16 g4!? (Timman played 16 \(\textstyle f7 \) but got nothing after 16...\(\textstyle xc7 17 \) \(\textstyle xc4 17 \) \(\textstyle xc4 and now:

- a) 17... Left 18 Left 19 Left
- b) 17....童xe5 18 dxe5 豐xg4 (the alternative 18...罩xd1+19罩xd1 豐xg4 20 鱼e3! 公d7 21 豐f7 公xe5 22 豐e7 公g6 23 豐xg7 was good for White in Donchev-Inkiov, Bulgarian Ch 1989) 19 罩dg1 罩d1+ (19...豐f5? 20 exf6 gxf6 21 鱼e3 was winning for White in Brynell-Wieweg, Stockholm Rilton Cup 1993/4) 20 罩xd1 豐xg5+21 �b1 豐xe5 22 豐f7 with an edge to White according to Nunn (NCO).

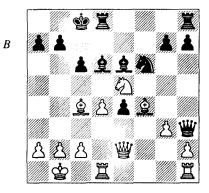
14...0-0-0

After 14... Id8 15 0-0-0 2d6 Bologan came up with the important novelty 16 2g5!, which causes Black lots of headaches:

- a) 16...0-0 17 豐f1! wins material after 17... 空h8 18 豐xh3 皇xh3 19 ②f7+ or 17... ②d5 18 豐xh3 皇xh3 19 皇xd8.
- b) After 16... \$\text{\mathbb{\overline}f5}\$, Bologan-Chandler, Bundesliga 1993/4 went 17 \(\text{\overline}xf6\) gxf6 18 \$\text{\overline}hf1\) and White was slightly

better, while Bologan suggests 17 h4! as being even stronger.

15 0-0-0 **a**d6 16 **a**b1 (D)

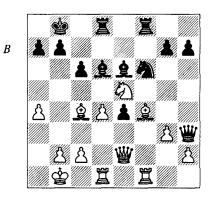


16...\#hf8

White also keeps an edge after 16... he8 17 hf1, when 17... f is better than 17... xe5? 18 xe6+! wxe6 19 dxe5 xd1+ 20 xd1 with a

big advantage for White, Popović-Inkiov, Palma de Mallorca 1989.

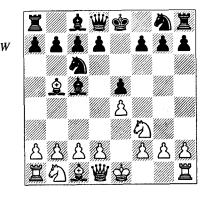
17 \(\mathbb{L}\) hf1 \(\mathbb{L}\) b8 18 a4! \((D) \)



White keeps the advantage. Lutz-Yagupov, Groningen 1995 continued 18... 含 8 19 a5 全 xc4 20 營 xc4, when the positional threat of a6 caused Black some aggravation.

3 The Classical Variation

1 e4 e5 2 Øf3 Øc6 3 \(\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$a}\$}}} \) b5 \(\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$c}\$}} \) (D)



3... c5 is a very natural and active move. However, it has never been really popular because it runs straight into White's basic plan of c3 and d4. As this can hardly be prevented, Black must be prepared to lose time by moving this bishop again. Nevertheless, there is a plus side in that that the bishop will be actively placed on the a7-g1 diagonal, where it can exert pressure on White's centre. Black's main problem is that it is difficult for him to maintain his pawn on e5, where it comes under considerable attack.

White's two main options after 3... 2c5 are 4 c3 and 4 0-0. Out of these two I'm opting for the slightly more flexible 4 0-0, which also rules out having to learn the unclear consequences of 4 c3 f5!?.

The Theory of the Classical Variation

1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 &b5 &c5 4 0-0
Black now has three main possibili-

ties: **A: 4...⊘ge7**

7 30 30

B: 4...**②**d4 C: 4...**②**f6

Other tries which deserve a mention are:

31

a) 4...d65c3 单d76d4 单b67 单g5 分f6 (7...f68 单e3 分ge7 9 分a3 0-0 10 分c4 分g6 11 分xb6 axb6 was slightly better for White in Romanovsky-Kubbel, USSR Ch 1925) 8 dxe5 公xe5 9 公xe5 dxe5 (9...单xb5? 10 公xf7! 含xf7 11 營b3+ and 12 營xb5 is good for White) 10 单xf6 gxf6 11 单xd7+ 營xd7 12 營xd7+ 含xd7 13 公d2 and Black's pawn weaknesses on the kingside give White an edge.

b) 4... 響f6 5 d3! (this quiet move is the best way to exploit Black's premature queen sortie) 5...h6 (a necessary pawn move because 5... ②ge7 6 皇g5 響e6 7 ②c3 looks ugly for Black) 6 皇e3! 皇b6 7 c4 ②d4 8 皇xd4 exd4 9 e5 響g6 10 b4 c5 11 bxc5 皇xc5 12 ②bd2! 豐xd3 13 ②b3 豐xd1 14 罩axd1 皇b6 15 c5 皇d8 16 ②bxd4 and White's pieces totally dominate the board, Runnby-Ekström, Swedish Ch 1979.

A)

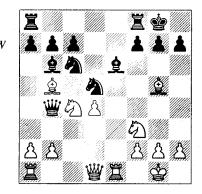
4...**∮**]ge7

Black wishes to develop quickly and hit back in the centre with ...d5. This line has similarities to 3... 2ge7 4 c3 g6 (see Chapter 1, Line E).

5 c3 **2** b6 6 d4 exd4 7 cxd4 d5 8 exd5 **2** xd5 9 **2** e1+ **2** e6 10 **2** g5 **3** d6 11 **2** bd2 0-0

Chasing the bishop with 11...h6 runs into 12 ②e4 豐b4 13 এxc6+ bxc6 14 豐c1!, when Black has serious problems. Ulybin-Gretarsson, Stockholm 1997 continued 14...hxg5 15 豐xc6+ 堂e7 16 a3 豐xb2 17 ②exg5 ②f4 18 豐e4 ②e2+ 19 豐xe2 豐xe2 20 黑xe2 Zad8 21 Zae1 Zd6 22 ②e5! 1-0.

12 ②c4 ₩b4 (D)



13 a4!?

13 ♠xc6 bxc6 14 \(\mathbb{Z} \)c1 also promises White an advantage, but the textmove is more ambitious.

13...**②d8**!

13...a6?! 14 兔xc6 bxc6 15 罩c1 兔a7 16 兔d2 營b7 17 營c2 ②b4 18 營b3! gave White a clear plus in the game V.Ivanov-Rodin, Russia 1994. 13...②d8 is a suggested improvement, but White can still keep an advantage.

14 \(\mathbb{I} a \) 3 f6 15 \(\mathbb{L} d \) 2 \(\mathbb{U} e \) 7 16 a5 c6 17 axb6 cxb5 18 \(\mathbb{I} x a \) \(\mathbb{L} c 6 19 \) \(\mathbb{I} x a \) \(\mathbb{I} x a \) \(\mathbb{L} x a \) \(\mathbb{L} a \) 3

Black doesn't have enough for the pawn deficit.

B)

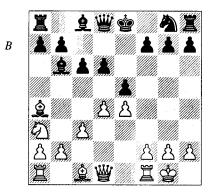
4...Ød4

Black hopes to ease his problems with a simplifying move.

5 ②xd4 &xd4

5...exd4 transposes to the Bird's Defence (see Chapter 1).

6 c3 **2** b6 7 d4 c6 8 **2** a4 d6 9 **2** a3 (D)



9...Øf6

There are two other tries for Black:

- a) 9...全c7 10 d5! 全d7 11 dxc6 bxc6 12 公c4 豐e7 13 f4 was good for White in Ljubojević-Durão, Orense 1974.
- b) 9...exd4 10 cxd4 ②e7 11 d5! (this important move gives White an edge) 11...0-0 12 dxc6 bxc6 13 皇g5 f6 14 鱼f4 d5 15 罩e1 鱼e6 16 鱼b3 營d7

17 exd5 ②xd5 18 ②c4 罩fd8 (not 18...①xf4? losing to 19 \wxd7 \@xd7 2xd7 20 \@xb6+) 19 \@g3 and Black's weak pawns gave White something to bite onto in Khalifman-Montecatine, Seville 1993.

10 **≜g5** h6

The usual move. After 10...0-0 I like 11 ②c4 ②c7 12 ③c2! ②e6 13 ②e3, leaving Black to decide how to deal with the uncomfortable pin on the f6-knight.

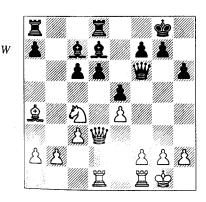
11 \(\text{\text} xf6 \) \(\text{\text} xf6 12 \) d5 \(\text{\text} d7 13 \) \(\text{\text} c4 \) \(\text{\text} c7 14 \) dxc6

Leaving Black with a vulnerable d6-pawn.

14...bxc6 15 營d3 0-0 16 里ad1

The sharp 16 f4!? should also be considered, e.g. 16...exf4 17 e5 全f5 18 對xd6! 全xd6 (18...對xd6 19 exd6 全b6+ 20 公xb6 axb6 21 全xc6 wins for White) 19 exf6 全c5+ 20 全h1 g5 21 公e5! and White is well on top.

16...\frac{\pi}{2}fd8 (D)



The pressure on the d6- and c6pawns makes Black's life rather uncomfortable. One possible plan for White here is 17 包e3!?, aiming to obtain the d5-square as an outpost after playing b4-b5. Also possible is the more direct 17 置d2, aiming to treble on the d-file, although after 17... 里ab8 18 置fd1 Black can try the complicated 18...d5!?. Then 19 包e3 d4 20 cxd4 置b4 21 dxe5! (21 營a6? exd4 left Black well placed in G.Todorović-J.Petronić, Yugoslavia 1992) 21... 營xe5 22 營a6 營xh2+ 23 含f1 leads to a very messy position, although I still prefer White.

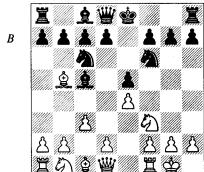
C)

4...9)f6

The main variation. Black counterattacks by hitting White's e4-pawn.

5 c3 (D)

There are other moves, including 5 2xe5 and 5 2c3, but this is the most logical. White aims to build up the usual pawn-centre.



Now Black has two possible continuations:

C1: 5... 2xe4!? 32

C2: 5...0-0 32

C1)

5... ②xe4!?

This move has been surprisingly neglected. True, it looks very risky to grab the e4-pawn, but no convincing refutation has been found.

6 ₩e2!?

Also enticing is 6 d4!? exd4 (if 6...\$b6, then 7 \$\mathbb{W}\$e2 f5 8 dxe5 0-0 9 \$\mathbb{D}\$bd2 is good for White) 7 cxd4 \$\mathbb{L}\$e7 (7...\$b6 8 d5 \$\mathbb{D}\$e7 9 \$\mathbb{D}\$g5 gives White a healthy initiative, according to Kengis) 8 d5 \$\mathbb{D}\$d6 9 \$\mathbb{L}\$a4 \$\mathbb{D}\$a5 10 \$\mathbb{L}\$f4 0-0 11 \$\mathbb{D}\$bd2 b6 12 \$\mathbb{L}\$c1 \$\mathbb{D}\$ab7 13 \$\mathbb{L}\$e1 with a strong initiative for the pawn, Lanka-Malaniuk, Odessa 1988.

6... 2xf2+!

The most testing. Some sources just give 6...f5 7 d3, which of course is clearly better for White.

7 **\$h1!**

7...d5(D)

8 c4!?

I can find no practical examples of this move, which is a direct attempt at a refutation of Black's play. Other moves include:

- a) 8 d3 🖄g3+ 9 hxg3 🕸xg3 with a messy position where the three pawns and White's airy king balance the extra piece.
- b) 8 置xf2 ②xf2+9 豐xf2 豐e7 10 d4 f6 11 鱼xc6+ bxc6 12 b3 e4 13 鱼a3 豐f7 with another unclear position, Boudre-McMahon, Massy 1993.

8...0-0

Black has a long list of alternatives, but there's no easy path:

- a) 8....皇d4 9 公xd4 exd4 10 cxd5 豐xd5 11 皇xc6+ 豐xc6 12 d3 f5 13 公d2 wins for White.
- b) 8...全g4 9 cxd5 營xd5 10 全c4 營c5 11 營xe4 f5 12 營d5 全xf3 13 gxf3 also wins.
- c) 8.... \$\delta 6!? 9 cxd5 \delta xd5 10 \delta c4 \$\delta d4 11 \delta xd5 \delta g3+ 12 hxg3 \delta xe2 13 \delta h2, when White's extra piece outweighs the two pawns.
- d) 8...f5 9 cxd5 ₩xd5 10 ②c3! ②xc3 11 dxc3 ②c5 12 ②xe5 and again Black is in trouble.

9 cxd5 **②**d4

9... wxd5 loses a piece to 10 \(\docume{2} \) c4!.

With the text-move Black traps the white queen, but has to give up three minor pieces in return.

10 **₩**xe4

Not 10 ②xd4 ₩h4!.

10... 2f5 11 ₩xe5 f6 12 ₩f4 g5 13 ②xd4 gxf4 14 ②xf5 2b6 15 d4

White's three pieces outweigh the black queen. This whole line could definitely use a practical test.

C2)

5...0-0

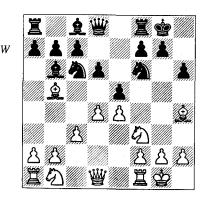
The popular choice. Black gets on with some necessary development.

6 d4 🕸 b6

Planning to counter 7 dxe5 with 7... 包xe4. Giving up the centre with 6...exd4 cannot be recommended. After 7 cxd4 鱼b6 8 e5 包d5 9 鱼g5 豐e8 10 包c3 包xc3 11 bxc3 White's better development gives him a distinct advantage.

7 ≜g5

White's choice includes 7 Ξ e1, 7 dxe5 and 7 \triangle xc6, but pinning the knight is considered the most dangerous continuation for Black.



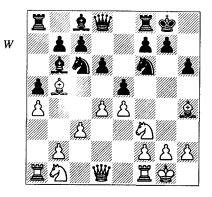
9 a4!

White has to be a little careful. At first sight White can play 9 鱼xc6 bxc6 10 dxe5 dxe5 and then win a pawn by 11 豐xd8 罩xd8 12 ②xe5, but after 12...g5! 13 鱼g3 ②xe4 14 ②xc6 鱼a6! Black has a very active position. Better than 11 豐xd8 is the calm 11 ②bd2. After 11... 罩e8 12 豐c2 g5 13 鱼g3 ②h5 14 c4! ②xg3 15 hxg3 豐e7 16 ②b3 鱼c5 17 豐c3 罩b8 18 a3 鱼g4

19 ②xc5 ≝xc5 20 b4 White held a slight edge in Almasi-Gulko, Pamplona 1996/7. If White wishes to avoid the complications of the main line, this looks like the way to play it.

9...a5 (D)

9...a6? is a mistake due to 10 \(\textit{L}\)xc6 bxc6 11 a5 \(\textit{L}\)a7 12 dxe5 dxe5 13 \(\textit{L}\)xd8 \(\textit{L}\)xd8 14 \(\textit{L}\)xe5 g5 15 \(\textit{L}\)g3 \(\textit{L}\)xe6 and not only is the knight forking rook and bishop, but Black no longer has the ...\(\textit{L}\)a6 resource discussed in the last note.



10 **Ze1** exd4

10... 營e7 11 ②a3 童g4 12 ②c4 g5 13 童g3 ②d7 14 ②e3 was better for White in Spassky-Quinones, Amsterdam IZ 1964. Black's main alternative is the complicated pawn sacrifice 10... 童g4!? 11 童xc6 bxc6 12 dxe5 dxe5 13 營xd8 董axd8 14 ②xe5 g5 15 童g3 and now:

a) 15...h5 16 2xg4 (16 2xc6 2de8 17 2d2 2d7 18 e5 2d5 19 c4 2xc6 20 cxd5 2xd5 is less clear) 16...2xg4 17 h3 h4 18 2xh4 gxh4 19 hxg4 2h7 20 2f1 2g8 21 f3 2d3 22 2a3 h3 23 ②c4 單gd8 (23...h2? 24 堂e2 單gd8 25 單h1 led to a winning position in Shmatkov-Mukhaev, Moscow 1995) 24 ②xb6 cxb6 25 堂f2 with a clear advantage to White.

b) 15...②xe4 16 ②xg4 f5 17 ②a3 ②xg3 18 ②xh6+ �g7 19 hxg3 \(\) \(

11 **≜**xc6 bxc6 12 **⑤**xd4 **≜**d7

12... **E**e8 13 ②d2 c5 14 ②4f3 **2**b7 15 **W**c2 gave White an edge in Thorsteins-Spassky, Reykjavik 1985.

13 公d2 里e8 14 豐f3 g5 15 皇g3 (D)

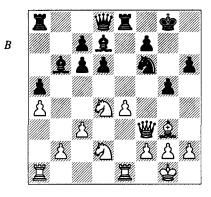
Black has the two bishops, but the weaknesses created by the ...g5 lunge give White real hopes of a kingside attack.

15...h5 16 h3!

Stronger than 16 h4 2g4! 17 hxg5 wxg5 and 16 e5 dxe5 17 2xe5 2g4, both of which are fine for Black.

The text-move is a suggestion from Macieja.

16...h4 17 &h2 g4



Macieja gives 17...全xd4 18 cxd4 置e6 19 e5 營e7 as equal, but after 20 營d1! (NCO) Black's weak kingside still gives him problems.

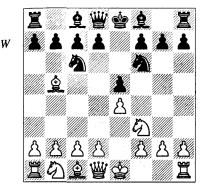
18 對f4! gxh3 19 ②2f3! hxg2

19... ②g4 20 gxh3 ②xh2 21 ★xh2 leaves the black king horribly exposed.

With the text-move (19...hxg2), we are still following Macieja's analysis, which stops with 20 e5, claiming a strong attack for White. This does seem to be true, e.g. 20...公d5 21 營h6 全xd4 22 公xd4 c5 23 罩e4!, planning to meet 23...cxd4 with 24 罩xh4.

4 The Berlin Defence

1 e4 e5 2 \$\alpha\$f3 \$\alpha\$c6 3 \$\alpha\$b5 \$\alpha\$f6 (D)

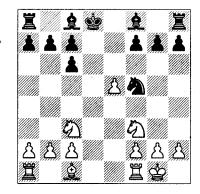


The Berlin Defence is one of Black's most solid and reliable ways of meeting the Ruy Lopez. Recently it has found its way into the repertoires of some of the world's leading young players, including Alexei Shirov and Vladimir Kramnik, while it has also been a long-time favourite of Britain's first grandmaster, Tony Miles. Being such a solid defence, there is the drawback that Black finds it difficult to create winning chances if White is content to play for a draw, but of course, this accusation could be levelled at most black defences.

The Berlin Endgame

The main line of the Berlin Defence gives rise to an endgame after the moves 1 e4 e5 2 \$\angle\$13 \$\angle\$c6 3 \$\alpha\$b5 \$\angle\$f6

4 0-0 ②xe4 5 d4 ②d6 6 ②xc6 dxc6 7 dxe5 ②f5 8 營xd8+ 含xd8. After White's most flexible move, 9 ②c3 (D), we reach the following position.



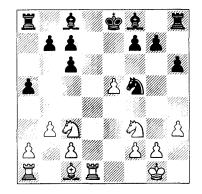
At first glance the pawn-structure seems to give White a persistent advantage. After all, White has a healthy 4-3 majority on the kingside, while Black should find it difficult to create a passed pawn from his own queenside majority, due to the doubled pawns. However, there are also some factors favouring Black. For example, White's advanced pawn on e5 presents Black with squares on f5 and d5. The e5-pawn could actually become quite weak if it's not well supported. Another plus for Black is that he possesses the bishop-pair.

In fact, White's best chance for an advantage lies in the slightly vulnerable

position of the black king, which has lost the right to castle and prevents the black rooks from connecting. White must play actively and attempt to exploit this temporary disharmony in the black position in order to create a concrete positional or tactical advantage.

The ... b4xc3 Exchange

This surprising exchange is one of Black's most potent weapons in the Berlin Endgame. At first sight, it appears a little strange just to give away the advantage of the bishop-pair, but following the trade, the presence of opposite-coloured bishops considerably eases Black's defensive task. Light-square control on the kingside makes it very difficult for White to mobilize his pawn majority, while it's also possible that White's pawns can end up as targets. Witness the following impressive display by Vishy Anand.



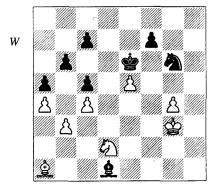
Fritz 5 - Anand Frankfurt 1998

12...\(\delta\) b4 13 \(\delta\) b2?! \(\delta\) xc3! 14 \(\delta\) xc3 c5 15 \(\mathbb{Z}\)d2 b6 16 \(\mathbb{Z}\)ad1 \(\mathbb{Q}\)e6 17 a4 ②e7 18 ②e1 g5 19 f3 ②c6 20 \$f2 **⊈**e7

Easy Guide to the Ruy Lopez

Black is already very comfortable, if not better, due to the weak e5-pawn.

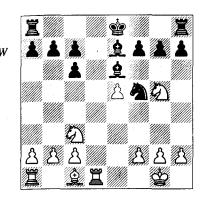
21 \(\text{\text{\pi}} b2 \) \(\text{\text{\pi}} \) \(\text{dd8} \) 22 c4 \(\text{\text{\pi}} \) xd2+ 23 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xd2 \(\omega\)f5 24 \(\omega\)e3 \(\mathbb{Z}\)d8 25 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xd8 ②xd8 26 f4 gxf4+ 27 \$\dispx xf4 \$\dispx b1 28 2f3 &c2 29 2d2 2e6+ 30 \$f3 \$f8 31 \$\dig e3 \$\dig g7 32 g4 \$\dig g6 33 \$\dig f3 h5 34 \$\psi f2 hxg4 35 hxg4 \(\mathbb{L} d1 36 \(\mathbb{L} g3 \) \(\mathbb{L} g7 \) 37 \$h4 \$f8 38 \$a1 \$e7 39 \$g3 ②f8 40 &b2 \$\dip e6 41 \dip a1 ②g6 (D)



The e5-pawn is lost and White's queenside pawns are extremely vulnerable. This opening was an inspired choice against the computer, which obviously didn't appreciate the positional subtleties of the endgame. Most humans would normally meet ... \$\dots b4 with 2c3-e2 or 2c3-e4, in either case retaining the knight.

White Plays ②g5x ne6

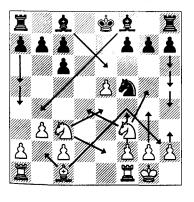
Similarly, this exchange is one of White's weapons.



J. Polgar - Smyslov Monaco 1994

Play continued 12 2xe6! fxe6 13 ②e4 and we can see that the exchange has favoured White. Black no longer possesses the bishop-pair, and White can still advance his pawn majority on the kingside. Another point is that White's e5-pawn is less vulnerable, as Black no longer has the long-term option of ... \delta e6 to attack it.

The Main Ideas



Since Black will find it difficult to connect rooks, he often tries to activate them on their original squares. In such cases it's common for Black to play ...a5-a4 to activate his a8-rook. Sometimes Black may even play ...h5-h4 to give the h8-rook some scope. It could then go to h5, where it could attack the e5-pawn. Black normally develops his bishops on e6 and b4 and often leaves the e7-square free for a possible knight retreat.

37

White's main plan will be to try to activate his kingside pawn majority. Hence the need for moves such as h3, which supports a later g4. The f3knight will want to move so White can create a pawn roller with f4. Normally the bishop goes to b2, but on occasions it can also go to f4, perhaps dropping back to g3 or h2, from where it can support White's pawn advance.

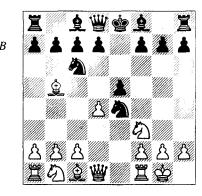
The Theory of the Berlin Defence

1 e4 e5 2 Øf3 Øc6 3 &b5 Øf6 4 0-0 9 xe4

Other moves usually lead to positions discussed elsewhere, e.g.:

- a) 4...\(\delta\) e7 5 \(\delta\) c3 d6 6 d4 \(\delta\) d7 and we reach a position discussed in Chapter 1. Line B.
- b) 4...d6 5 d4 \(\frac{1}{2}\)d7 6 \(\frac{1}{2}\)c3 and again we reach Chapter 1, Line B.
 - c) 4...\(\docume{2}\)c5 transposes to Chapter 3. 5 d4! (D)

This is White's strongest move. The other attempt at 'breaking the Berlin Wall' is with 5 Ze1, but most top players believe that Black has no problems after 5... Ød6 6 Øxe5 ♣e7 7 **≜**d3 0-0.



Black has two main defences here:

A: 5...**⊈**e7 B: 5... 2 d6 40

Other tries are:

- a) 5...exd4?! (too risky) 6 \(\mathbb{Z}\)e1 f5 7 ②xd4 ②xd4 (7... ©c5 loses to 8 =xe4+! fxe4 9 \bigwh5+ and 10 \bigwhxc5) 8 \bigwhxc4 c6 9 f3 cxb5 10 fxe4 \bigwedge b6 11 exf5+ \bigce f7 12 鱼e3 豐xd4 13 鱼xd4 d6 14 包c3 鱼xf5 15 罩e3 堂g8 16 包d5 and Black was under severe pressure in Rozentalis-Kaminski, Polish Cht (Krynica) 1997.
- b) 5...a6 isn't a bad transpositional move, after which White should play 6 2a4, reaching the Open Defence (see Chapter 7).

5...全e7 6 營e2 公d6

The safest move. Other attempts allow White to achieve a very quick initiative:

a) 6...f5 7 dxe5 0-0 8 4 bd2 d5 9 exd6 2xd6 10 2xc6 bxc6 11 2e5 and White has a clear advantage.

Easy Guide to the Ruy Lopez

b) 6...d5 is a sterner defence, but White is still better after 7 ∮xe5 \(\frac{1}{2}\)d7 8 \(\text{\ti}}\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\t ②c3 ②xc3 11 bxc3 皇e8 12 豐a6 with a clear advantage, Em.Lasker-Scheve. Berlin sim 1891) 9 **E**e1 **4**d7 (9...0-0? 10 f3! wins material) 10 \$\frac{1}{2}\$f4 c6 (10...0-0!? 11 ②d2! {11 f3 ≜g5 is not so clear 11...2xd2 12 2xd7! #e8 13 豐b5 ②c4 14 豐xd5 ②xb2 15 里ab1 c6 16 響f5 is good for White) 11 ②d2 ②xd2 12 ≜xd2 and Black has problems completing development, as 12... \$\&\rightarrow\$ e6 loses to 13 \(\phi\)\xf7! \(\phi\)\xf7 14 **⊉** h4.

7 2xc6 bxc6

Recapturing with 7...dxc6 allows White to reach a menacing position after 8 dxe5 \$\angle\$f5 9 \$\mathbb{Z}\$d1 \$\angle\$d7. Here White can try the enticing 10 e6!? fxe6 11 De5 2d6 12 Wh5+ g6 13 Dxg6, but in fact things are not so easy after 13...包g7 14 Wh6 包f5 15 Wh3 罩g8 16 豐xh7 罩g7 17 豐h5 豐f6!. Now 18 ₩h8+ &f7 19 ₩xa8 ₩xg6 gives Black far too much play for the exchange, while even after the stronger 18 20e5+ \$e7 19 ②g4 \begin{aligned}
\text{bh4} 20 \begin{aligned}
\text{wk4} + ②xh4 21
\end{aligned} h3 e5 Black still has some compensation for the pawn. In view of all this, White should consider the more restrained 10 2c3 0-0 11 2e4, which certainly keeps a nice spatial advantage, while Black loses more time unravelling from the pin on the d-file.

8 dxe5 **2**b7

Why here rather than the more active f5-square? Well, after 8... 2f5

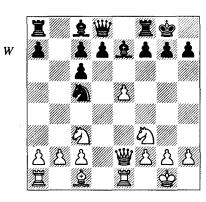
White should play aggressively with 9 ₩e4! g6 10 ②d4 ②xd4 11 ₩xd4. Now 11...0-0 12 **Q**h6 **Z**e8 13 **Q**c3 d5 14 exd6 全f6 15 Ya4 cxd6 16 Yxc6 of 5 17 Zae1 led to a large advantage for White in Taimanov-Nikitin, USSR 1970. A more recent attempt to improve on Black's play is with the interesting move 11...d5. The point is that after 12 exd6 0-0! 13 \$h6 \$f6 14 ₩c5 罩e8 15 ₩xc6 &d7 16 dxc7 &xc6 17 cxd8₩ Zaxd8 Black's development advantage balances the twopawn deficit. With this in mind, White should prefer 12 \$\oldsymbol{\pm}\$h6!, preventing Black castling kingside. In the game M.Schlosser-Keitlinghaus, Münster 1992 White kept the advantage after 12... Qe6 13 包d2 c5 14 Wa4+ Wd7 15 ₩a6 c6 16 Zad1 ₩c7 17 b3 ₩b6 18 豐e2 0-0-0 19 包f3 罩he8 20 包g5 罩d7 21 9)xf7!.

9 5 c3 0-0

Black can start his knight manoeuvre straight away with 9...夕c5 (threatening ... \$\delta\$ a6), when White should answer 10 20d4 0-0 (but not 10... \(\) a6? 11 \(\) g4! \(\) xf1 12 \(\) xg7 If 8 13 \$xf1, when Black has won the exchange but his position is a complete mess) 11 \(\mathbb{Z}\)d1 (11 \(\mathbb{Z}\)e1 is also possible; after 11... De6 we reach the note to White's 11th move) 11... We8 12 夕f5 f6 13 曾g4 夕e6 14 皇h6, with the initiative, Vasiukov-Knežević, Leningrad 1991

10 Let (D)

10... Ze8 is inferior. After 11 Wc4 ②c5 12 ②g5! 鱼xg5 13 鱼xg5 豐xg5 14 wxc5 Black will find it hard to break White's grip on the dark squares.



39

11 **≜e**3

White continues to develop classically, centralizing his pieces. Another good choice here is 11 2d4 2e6 12 **2**e3 and now:

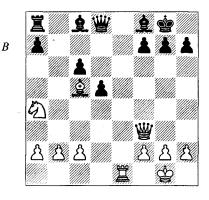
- a) $12...\cancel{2}$ xd4 $13 \cancel{2}$ xd4 c5 14 $\cancel{2}$ e3 d5 15 exd6 \(\text{\texts}\) xd6 16 \(\text{\texts}\)e4 \(\text{\texts}\)b7 (or 16... \(\hat{2} \) xh2+ 17 \(\hat{2} \) xh2 \(\bar{W} \) h4+ 18 \(\hat{2} \) g1 ₩xe4 19 \(\text{\text{\$x}}\) xc5 \(\text{\text{\$w}}\) xe2 \(\text{\$z}\) \(\text{\$z}\) \(\text{\$z}\) 21 \(\mathbb{Z}\)e7 with a very good ending for White) 17 ②xd6 cxd6 18 \(\mathbb{Z}\) ad1 \(\mathbb{Y}\) f6 19 f3 \(\mathbb{Z}\) ae8 20 \(\mathbb{W}\)d2 \(\mathbb{Z}\)e6 21 \(\mathbb{L}\)f2 and Black's weak d6-pawn promises a small edge for White, Tseshkovsky-Ivkov, Bled/Portorož 1979.
- b) 12...**\(\beta\)**b3! a6 14 f4 f5 15 exf6 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xf6 16 \(\oldsymbol{Q}\)e4 \(\mathbb{Z}\)f7 17 \(\mathbb{Z}\)f1 d6 18 f5 2 f8 19 2 d4 and White's pieces are ready for a kingside assault, Niermann-Fecke, Germany 1994.

11...Øe6 12 **\(\mathbb{\math}\m{\mathbb{\mathbb{\mathbb{\mathbb{\mathbb{\mathbb{\mathbb{\math**

Similar play arises after 12...**\mathbb{E}**b8 13 b3 \(\text{\texts} b4 14 \(\text{\texts} d2 \) d5 15 exd6 cxd6 16 De4!, when White maintains a grip on the centre. Jansa-Knežević, Namestovo 1987 continued 16... xd2 17 營xd2 d5 18 營c3! 營b6?! (Black should prefer 18... \u20acc7, allowing White a bind on the dark squares after 19 ②c5) 19 ②d6! 豐c7 20 ②f5 ②b7 (the alternative 20... 墨e8? loses brilliantly to 21 墨xd5! cxd5 22 墨xe6!) 21 豐e5! 墨fc8 22 ②d6! 墨d8 23 ②xf7 and White won.

13 exd6 cxd6 14 2 d4 2 xd4

Following 14... 盒d7 15 包f5 d5 16 ②xe7+ 營xe7 17 營d2 營h4 18 包e2 置fe8 19 b3 White keeps a slight advantage, Karpov-Korchnoi, Merano Wch (2) 1981.



The general assessment is that White's dark-square control gives him an edge. The position has simplified somewhat, but there are still several tactics lurking in the background. On first inspection it looks like 19...曾a5 wins a piece, but after 20 b4! 豐xa4 21 置e8 单b7 22 豐e2! White wins the piece back due to back-rank threats, e.g. 22...豐xa2 23 h3 h6 24 置xa8 单xa8 25 豐e8 单b7 26 豐xf8+ \hforall h7 27 豐xf7 豐a1+ 28 \hforall h2 and the a-pawn drops as well. 19... \hforall d7 20 \hforall xf8 \hforall xf8

B)

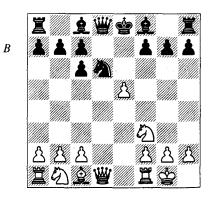
5... **②d6 6 ≜**xc6

Once more White has alternatives such as 6 dxe5 and 6 \(\alpha g5 \), but the main line promises most chance of an advantage.

6...dxc6

6...bxc6 makes no sense here. After 7 dxe5 包b7 8 包c3 包c5 9 包d4 White is already in a good position. Sion Castro-Campora, Leon 1997 continued 9...包e6 10 包xe6 fxe6 11 營h5+ g6 12 營g4 d5 13 exd6 cxd6 14 營c4 包d7 15 包e4 包e7 16 營d4 and Black was in big trouble.

7 dxe5 (D)



Now Black has two possibilities:

B1: 7...②e4!? 41 B2: 7...②f5 42

B1)

7...De4!?

Very rarely seen, but although this is risky, there is no obvious refutation.

8 ₩e2

Attacking the knight is the best way. Going into the endgame with 8 豐xd8+ 堂xd8 is no longer so appealing for White. The knight is better placed on e4 as it doesn't block the light-squared bishop.

8...**≜**f5

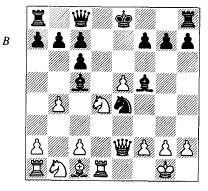
More of a test than 8... ②c5, which allows White to obtain an easy advantage after 9 Id1 2d7 10 ②c3 2e7 11 2e3.

9 Zd1 Wc8

Given the strength of White's 11th move in the main line, Black could well take a further look at 9... 響e7. It looks rather ugly to block in the f8bishop, but White must react quickly. If Black were able to complete his development he would have no problems at all. In Jansa-Sahu, Wrexham 1997, White played energetically with 10 @e3 \d8 11 \@a3!? \dxd1+ 12 \dxd1 and after 12... 40c3? 13 bxc3 \(\mathbb{u}\)xa3 14 ②d4 ©c8 15 e6! he was able to crash through the black defences. If 12...g6 White should grab the pawn with 13 £xa7, as 13...b6 14 4 dd looks good. Perhaps Black should be content with 12...a6!?.

10 ②d4 ♠c5 11 b4! (D)

A significant move, which takes away the c5-square from Black. This becomes important when White tries to trap the knight. A quieter way to play would be 11 \(\Delta e3 \), although after 11...0-0 12 f3 \(\Delta xd4 \) 13 \(\Delta xd4 \) \(\Delta g5 \) 14 \(\Delta c3 \) \(\Delta e8 \) 15 \(\Delta d2 \) \(\Delta e6 \) Black had equalized in Cu.Hansen-Westerinen, Nordic Ch (Reykjavík) 1997.



11...**⊉**b6

Capturing with 11...鱼xb4 runs into 12 e6!, when Black is forced to give up material, e.g. 12...fxe6 13 ②xf5 exf5 14 f3. Sulskis-Westerinen, Gausdal 1995 went 12...鱼g6 13 exf7+ 含f8 (13...含xf7 14 營c4+含f6 15 f3 wins) 14 營c4 鱼d6 15 ②e6+含e7 16 f8鱼+鱼xf8 17 ②xf8 含xf8 18 f3 ②f6 19 鱼a3 and White's material advantage paid off in the end.

After the text-move, the knight has no squares to go to from e4, but can White actually win it? It's not as easy as it looks!

12 c4

12 f3 allows Black to escape after 12... d7 13 \(\Delta b2 \) \(\Delta g5 \) 14 c4 \(\Delta xd4 + 15 \) \(\Delta xd4 \) 0-0-0 16 \(\Delta c3 \) \(\Delta e6 \) with an equal position, Wahls-Ekström, Dresden Z 1998. However, 12 \(\Delta e3! ?\) looks

12...c5 13 ②xf5 豐xf5 14 b5

14 当f3?! 当xe5 15 鱼b2 当xb2 16 当xe4+ 含f8 is good for Black.

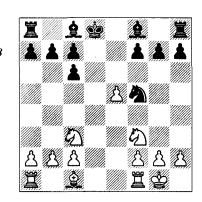
14... \(\hat{2}\) a5 15 f3 \(\hat{2}\) c3 16 \(\hat{2}\) xc3 \(\hat{2}

We are following Rõtšagov-Sammalvuo, Finnish Cht 1996/7. White's better pawn-structure gives him a small edge.

B2)

7... ②f5 8 \(\psi \text{xd8} + \psi \text{xd8} 9 \(\overline{0}\text{c3}(D)\)

Also possible are moves such as 9 b3, 9 h3 and 9 \(\mathbb{\pi}\)d1+, but the text-move is considered to be the most flexible.



Black now has a number of development plans:

B21: 9...**⊴**e7 42

B22: 9...≜e6 43

B23: 9...h6 44

B24: 9...**\$**e8 44

Yet another idea is 9...a5!?, immediately trying to gain space on the queenside. This can often transpose to other lines. Against such a non-developing move it makes sense to play as actively as possible, for example 10 20e4 h6 11 h3 20e6 12 g4 20e5 13 20ed2 20e7 14 c4 20e6 15 20e4 20e7 14 c4 20e6 15 20e5 19 20e3 20e8 20 20e1 hxg4 21 e6! and White's initiative told in Blehm-Karpatchev, Cappelle la Grande 1998.

B21)

9...�e7

A relatively new plan for Black. The knight is ready to hop to g6, where it pressures the e5-pawn.

10 Dd4!?

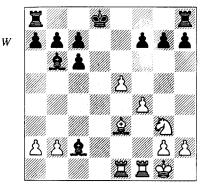
A logical move, which paves the way for the advance of the f-pawn. After the slower 10 h3 Black can play 10...\$\displayse8\$, transposing to Line B24. Ivanchuk-Shirov, Monaco Amber blindfold 1998 went instead 10...\$\displayse6\$ for \$11 \displayse5 + \displayse8 12 \displayse6 13 \displayse6 13 \displayse5 16 \displayse6 fxe6 15 \displayse5 e4 \displayxe5 16 \displayse6 fxe6 15 \displayse5 exect and White was slightly better due to the weakness on e6

10... 2g6 11 f4 &c5 12 &e3 &b6 13 Zae1 2h4 14 2e4

After 14 e6, Shirov-Z.Almasi, Tilburg 1996 continued 14...fxe6? 15 2xe6+ 2xe6 16 2xb6 axb6 17 2xe6
2d7 18 2fe1 2ae8 19 2xe8 2xe8 20 置xe8 \$\text{ \text{\$\xet{\$\xet{\$\text{\$\exitit{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\}\exitit{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\tex{

The text-move is Shirov's suggested improvement.

14...②f5 15 ②xf5 ②xf5 16 ②g3 ②xc2 (D)



Shirov comments that after 17 \(\mathbb{E} f2 \) \(\alpha xe3 \) 18 \(\mathbb{E} xe3 \) White has good play for the pawn. Perhaps it's even stronger to capture on b6 first. Following 17 \(\alpha xb6 \) axb6 18 \(\mathbb{E} f2 \) \(\alpha a4 \) 19 \(\mathbb{E} d2 + \) \(\alpha c8 \) 20 \(\beta)3 \(\alpha b5 \) 21 \(\alpha f5 \) g6 22 \(\alpha h6 \) White has a strong initiative. Further tests are needed in this line.

B22)

9...**≜**e6

Sensible development, but this allows White to harass the bishop.

10 \d1+!

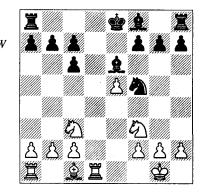
Stronger than the immediate 10 \(\oldsymbol{2}\)g5, which can be answered by the

unorthodox but effective 10... \$\delta 7!\$. Black is ready to recapture on e6 with the king, where it keeps an eye on the e5-pawn, and there is no way to exploit the king's position on e7.

10...\$e8 (D)

10...\$c8 is also answered by 11 ₺g5. Then:

- a) 11...\$c4 12 b3 \$b4 13 \$b2 \$xc3 14 \$xc3 \$d5 15 \$\times\$h3 h5 16 \$\times\$f4 \$\times\$e6 17 \$\times\$d3 b6 18 \$\times\$d2! \$\times\$b7 19 \$\times\$xe6 fxe6 20 \$\times\$g5 and White's domination of the d-file guarantees him a large advantage, Dvoirys-Aleksandrov, Moscow 1996.
- b) 11...\$c5 12 Dce4 \$b6 13 Dxe6 fxe6 14 \$f1 \$\mathbb{I}\$f8 15 a4! a5 16 \$\mathbb{I}\$a3 \$\mathbb{E}\$b8 17 \$\mathbb{I}\$d7 \$\mathbb{E}\$a7 18 \$\mathbb{I}\$ad3 and once again Black is very tied up, Gdanski-Gretarsson, Stockholm 1997.



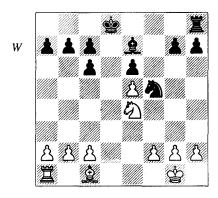
11 夕g5 **≜**e7

11... ♠c4 gives White too many open lines after 12 b3 ♠b4 13 bxc4! ♠xc3 14 ॾb1 b6 15 g4 ♠h4 16 f4.

12 2xe6 fxe6 13 2e4 \(\mathbb{I} \)d8

Better than 13...\$f7?! 14 g4 \(\Delta\)h4 15 \(\mathbb{I}\)d7! \(\Delta\)f3+ 16 \(\mathbb{I}\)g2 \(\Delta\)xe5 17 \(\mathbb{I}\)xc7 and the white rook causes Black problems on the seventh rank, Benjamin-Sherzer, New York 1994.

14 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xd8+ \(\mathbb{Z}\)xd8 \((D)\)



We are following J.Polgar-Smyslov, Monaco 1994. White has a small but unmistakable edge. Perhaps the most active way to continue would be 15 \(\hat{\text{\text{g}}} 5 \) \(\hat{\text{\text{\$\text{\text{\$\text{\text{\text{\$\ext{\$\exiting{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\xitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\xi\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\tex{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\}\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\}\$}}\exitint{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\e c5 18 c3.

B23)

9...h6

Preparing ... 2e6, without having to worry about 2g5.

10 h3

White aims for g4.

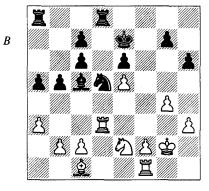
10...**⊈**e8

10...a5 11 a4!? **≜**e6 12 g4 **⑤**e7 13 20d4 g5 14 f4 gxf4 15 20xe6+ fxe6 16 ≜xf4 led to a small advantage for White in Djurhuus-Dumitrache, Haifa Echt 1989, while 10... **2**e6 11 g4 **4**2e7 12 2 d4 c5 13 2 xe6+ fxe6 14 f4 2 c6 15 \(\hat{\text{\text{\$\omega\$}}} \) e3 b6 16 \(\hat{\text{\$\omega\$}} \) e4 \(\hat{\text{\$\omega\$}} \) e7 17 \(\hat{\text{\$\omega\$}} \) g2 is also pleasant for White, Campora-Rubinetti, Argentine Ch 1989.

11 \(\text{f4!?} \)

This bishop can drop back on the kingside and help to organize a pawn assault.

11... 2e6 12 g4 De7 13 Dd4 Dd5 14 ②xe6 fxe6 15 ②e2 &c5 16 \(\mathbb{Z}\) ad1 \$e7 17 &c1 \(\mathbb{L}\) hd8 18 a3 b5 19 \$\(\mathbb{L}\)g2 a5 20 \(\mathbb{I} \) d3 (D)



Wahls-Smejkal, Bundesliga 1997/8. White has eliminated one of the black bishops and his superior pawn-structure guarantees an edge.

B24)

9....e8

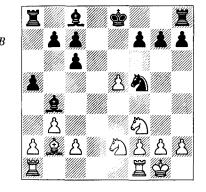
The most popular move. Black moves his king to a less vulnerable square, and waits to see White's intentions before committing himself. Here we will discuss two options for White:

B241: 10 b3 44 B242: 10 h3 45

B241)

10 b3 a5 11 \triangle b2 \triangle b4 12 \triangle e2 (D)

The other major move here is 12 ②e4. After 12...a4 13 a3 \ e7 14 b4 2 e6 15 \(\mathbb{I}\)fe1. Onishchuk-Miles, Biel 1996 continued 15...h6?! 16 h3 \(\mathbb{\textsf{\pi}}\)d8 17 \(\mathbb{I}\) ad1 \(\mathbb{I}\) d7 18 \(\mathbb{I}\) xd7 \(\mathbb{S}\) xd7 19 g4 ②h4 20 ②xh4 ②xh4 21 ②c5+ 🕏c8 22 ©xe6 fxe6 23 \(\mathbb{Z}\)e4 \(\mathbb{Z}\)d4 b6 25 \$\pm\$f1 \boxed{\subseteq} f8 26 \boxed{\subseteq} e2 and White went on to win. In a later game Miles improved on his play with 15... \alpha d8! 16 \alpha ad1 b6 17 h3 h5! (the point - Black hasn't wasted a move with ...h6) 18 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xd8+ \$\preceq\$xd8 19 \(\elle{\rm c}\)1 \(\elle{\rm d5}\) 20 \(\elle{\rm g}\)5 \(\elle{\rm xg5}\) 21 Dexg5 \ and the powerful bishop on d5 meant that Black was fine in Sedina-Miles, Toscolano 1996.



12...a4 13 c4

Playing to restrict the light-squared bishop, which cannot find a home on d5.

13...h5

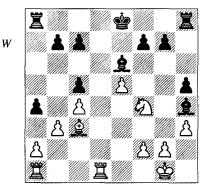
13... \(\delta c 5 \) 14 \(\Delta d 2 \) h5 15 \(\Delta e 4 \) \(\delta e 7 \) 16 ②f4 b6 17 罩fe1 鱼e6 18 鱼c3 gave White a small plus in Jansa-Plachetka, Ostrava 1992

≜e6 17 h3 ⊘h4

After the game Miles suggested 17...axb3 18 axb3 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xa1 19 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xa1 \(\mathbb{Z}\)d7

as an improvement for Black, but following 20 \$\dipsi f1 \$\dipsi c6 21 \$\dipsi e2\$, White still has a minute plus.

18 ②xh4 **②**xh4 (D)



Now Emms-Miles, British League (4NCL) 1997/8 continued 19 2xe6 fxe6 20 g3 &e7 21 &g2 &f7 and was soon drawn. A better try for White would be 19 \(\tilde{Q}\)d5!?, e.g. 19...\(\tilde{Q}\)d8 20 f4 g6 21 \$\displaysepsilon f2 and White still enjoys any advantage that's going.

B242)

10 h3 a5

Other moves include:

- a) 10...\$e6 11 g4 De7 12 Dg5 Ձc4 13 ፲ e1 ②d5 14 ②d1! h6 15 ②e4 2b4 16 2e3 2d5 17 2g3 2e6 18 a3 2d5 19 2g2! a6 20 f4 2c5+ 21 2h2 h5 (de Firmian-Miles, Biel 1990) and now 22 ②e4 **2**e7 23 **2**g3 keeps the advantage.
- b) 10... De7!? (this possibility is becoming more popular) 11 \(\mathbb{Z}\)e1 \(\overline{\D}\)g6 (11...2)d5!? 12 De4 Db4 13 \(\mathbb{E} e2 \(\mathbb{E} f5 \) 14 Ød4 ≜xe4 15 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xe4 c5 16 a3 cxd4 17 axb4 \(\text{\tint{\text{\ti}\text{\texi}\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\t

a6 led to a draw in Topalov-Kramnik, Wijk aan Zee 1999) 12 2e4 h6 (the alternative 12...2e7 13 2d6+! cxd6 14 exd6 f6 15 dxe7 2xe7 16 b3 \$f7 17 2a3 2e8 18 2d2 is slightly awkward for Black) 13 2d4 c5 14 2b5 \$d7 15 f4 \$c6! 16 a4 2e7 with an unclear position, Brodsky-Van den Doel, Wijk aan Zee 1999.

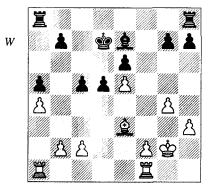
11 \(\hat{\pm} \)f4!? \(\hat{\pm} \)e6

11... \$\Delta b4 12 \Quad \Quad e6 13 c3 \Quad f8 14 \quad \quad f6 15 \Quad f8 \quad e6 16 e6! f6 17 \Quad f7 \quad f6 18 \quad \quad \quad c7 \quad was good for White in Lutz-Korchnoi, Dresden Z 1998, as 18... \Quad \quad \quad xe6 fails to 19 \quad \quad d8!, but Black managed to equalize in Bologan-Aleksandrov, Kishinev 1998 after 11... \quad a4!? 12 \quad a3 \quad e7 13 \quad a4 \quad f6 15 \quad \quad d2 65 15 \quad \quad d2 65 16 \quad d2 64 \quad h4.

12 g4 De7 13 Dg5 Dd5

The most prudent course of action. Maintaining the bishop with 13...\(\to c4\) can run into a swift attack down the efile, e.g. 14 \(\to f7\) \(\to g3\) \(\to b4\) 19 \(\to f7\) \(\to g8\) 18 \(\to xc7\) \(\to h4\) 19

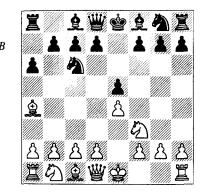
14 ②xe6 fxe6 15 单d2 单b4 16 ②xd5 cxd5 17 单e3 学d7 18 a4 单e7 19 学g2 c5 (D)



Galkin-Aleksandrov, Russia Cup (Krasnodar) 1997. This endgame is reasonably level, although the pawn majorities mean that there is still plenty to fight for.

5 The Deferred Steinitz and Other Fourth Move Alternatives

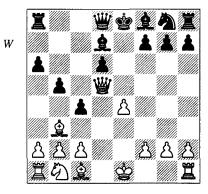
1 e4 e5 2 **2** f3 **2** c6 3 **2** b5 a6 4 **2** a4 (D)



In this chapter we will look at Black's fourth move alternatives to 4... af6, including the Delayed Schliemann (4...f5), the Norwegian Variation (4...f5) ab3 ab3 and, most importantly, the Steinitz Defence Deferred (4...d6).

The last of these options is basically an improved version of the Steinitz Defence. One of the reasons for this is that Black is ready at any moment to escape the pin on the a4-e8 diagonal with a timely ...b5. This can be seen to the full effect if White tries

to follow the same recipe as against the Steinitz Defence. After 5 d4 b5! 6 全b3 公xd4 7 公xd4 exd4 the natural 8 wxd4? is a mistake which falls into what's known as the 'Noah's Ark Trap'. After 8...c5! White cannot avoid a loss of material, e.g. 9 wd5 全e6 10 wc6+ 全d7 11 wd5 c4! (D) and the Lopez bishop is cruelly trapped!

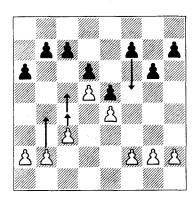


White has a few different choices against the Steinitz Deferred, including 5 0-0, 5 c4 and 5 \(\Delta\)xc6+, but I'm recommending the most popular move, 5 c3, which immediately goes about setting up a pawn-centre with d4. Black can then choose to play

adventurously with the risky 5...f5, which leads to sharp play reminiscent of the Schliemann Defence. It's more usual, however, for Black to support the e5-pawn, either with ... Dge7-g6, or ...g6 and ... g7. Play in these lines is much slower and of a positional nature. Black's position is usually very solid, if slightly cramped.

White Plays d4-d5

In many variations of the Steinitz Deferred. White has the option of maintaining the tension in the centre or pushing with d4-d5, reaching this type of closed position.



The strategy then become very similar to lines of the King's Indian Defence. White may seek to attack on the queenside by trying to enforce the c4c5 advance, while Black will play in a similar way on the other side with ...f5. One major difference from the King's Indian is that the light-squared bishops are normally exchanged quite early after d4-d5. This difference usually favours White, as the pawn-structure

dictates that White has swapped off his traditionally 'bad' bishop, while Black no longer has his 'good' bishop.

The Theory of Black's 4th Move Alternatives

1 e4 e5 2 Ø f3 Ø c6 3 & b5 a6 4 & a4

We will now consider three main continuations:

A: 4...f5 49 B: 4...b5 49 50 C: 4...d6

Other moves include:

- a) 4...g6 5 d4 exd4 6 2xd4 (White can also play as against 3...g6 with 6 \$g5, e.g. 6...\$e7 7 \$xe7 \$\alpha\$gxe7 8 ②xd4) 6...\$g7 7 ②xc6 bxc6 8 0-0 ©e7 9 f4 f5 and here Tal recommends 10 e5 0-0 11 We2 with advantage.
- b) 4... 2 ge7 5 c3 b5 (for 5... d6 6 d4 **2**d7 see Line C) 6 **2**b3 d5 7 d4! exd4 8 exd5 ②xd5 9 0-0 호e6 10 호g5 호e7 11 全xe7 營xe7 12 罩e1 營d6 13 分bd2 0-0 14 夕e4 豐f4 15 夕c5 豐d6 16 ②xe6 fxe6 17 ②g5! and White has a dangerous attack, Kurajica-Klarić, Yugoslavia 1978.
- c) 4...\(\delta\)c5 isn't bad. After 5 c3 4)f6 6 d4 (it should also be mentioned that 6 0-0 transposes to Chapter 6) 6...\$b670-00-08\$g5h69\$h4 d6 we reach a position similar to one discussed in Chapter 3, Line C, except for the insertion of ... a6 and 2 a4. After 10 \$xc6 bxc6 11 dxe5 dxe5 White can choose between the relatively quiet 12 ②bd2 and 12 對xd8 罩xd8 13 ②xe5 g5 14 2g3 2xe4 15 2xc6, when Black

no longer has 15... 2 a6, but even so after 15... Ee8 there is compensation for the pawn.

A)

4...f5

This delayed Schliemann has never really caught on. 4 d4 against the normal Schliemann is not effective, as after 4...fxe4 5 ②xe5 ②xe5 6 dxe5 c6 Black attacks the bishop and threatens ... \delta a 5+, picking up the e5-pawn. Here, however, White's bishop is less exposed on a4 so...

5 d4! exd4

Now 5...fxe4 6 Dxe5 is quite favourable to White.

6 e5! **≜b**4+

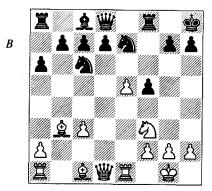
6... **≜**c5 7 0-0 **√**ge7 8 c3 dxc3 9 ②xc3 d5 10 2g5! leaves Black struggling to complete his development. 10... \ e6 11 \ \ c1 \ h6 12 \ \ exe7 \ \ exe7 13 2d4 \$f7 14 2xe6 \$xe6 15 2xd5! led to a winning position in Mortensen-Lilja, Copenhagen 1998, while 10...\$f8 11 \(\mathbb{L} c1 \) \(\mathbb{L} a7 12 \) \(\mathbb{L} xc6 \) bxc6 13 De2 c5 14 Df4 c6 15 e6 left Black with an extremely grim position in W. Watson-Nunn, London 1984.

7 c3! dxc3 8 \(\Delta\)xc3 \(\Delta\)ge7 9 0-0 ≗xc3

Alternatives do not ease Black's problems:

- a) 9...d5 10 包e2 鱼e6 11 包f4 豐d7 12 ②g5 **호**g8 13 **營**h5+ g6 14 **營**h6 and White simply threatens \mathbb{\mathbb{W}}g7 followed by **營xh8!**.
- b) 9...0-0 10 ②e2! d6 11 a3 &c5 12 b4 \(\text{\hat{b}} 66 13 \(\text{\hat{b}} 63 + \text{\hat{c}} 618 14 \(\text{exd6} ! \) 2f4!, followed by 2g5.

10 bxc3 0-0 11 \(\textit{\rm b}\)3+ \(\textit{\rm h}\)8 12 \(\textit{\rm e}\)1! (D)



Lobron-Bialas, Bundesliga 1986/7. A pawn is a small price to pay for such a position. In particular, White's bishops are ready to cause havoc on the open board.

4...b5 5 ♠b3 ੴa5

This is the so-called Norwegian Variation, Black's most direct attempt to hunt down the Lopez bishop. Other moves:

- a) 5.... \(\oldsymbol{\phi} \) c5 6 c3! and now:
- a1) 6...\$\displaystyle{0}\$f6 7 d4 exd4 (7...\$\displaystyle{0}\$b6 8 dxe5 wins for White after 8... 294 9 鱼xf7+! or 8... ②xe4 9 營d5) 8 cxd4 全b4+9全d2 全xd2+10分bxd2 d5 11 e5 and White's centre gives him a clear advantage. This position can be compared to one arising from the Giuoco Piano after 1 e4 e5 2 \$\f3 \$\f3 6\f3 \(\textit{\tit{\textit{\textit{\textit{\textit{\textit{\textit{\textit{\texti when Black succeeds in breaking up the white centre. Here the position of

the white bishop (b3 instead of c4) makes all the difference.

- a2) 6...d6 7 d4 exd4 8 cxd4 \(\frac{1}{2}\) b6 9 h3!, preventing ... \(\) g4 and securing the centre.
- b) 5... 16 is not a bad transpositional move. 6 2g5 looks tempting, but 6...d5! 7 exd5 2d4 is fine for Black. Therefore White should simply play 6 0-0, transposing to Chapter 6.

6 0-0 d6

6... \Dxb3 7 axb3 d6 8 d4 transposes to the main line of this section.

7 d4 (5)xb3

7...f6 8 ②c3 ②xb3 9 axb3 reaches the same position. Black's only other try is 7...exd4. After 8 2xd4 \(\(\text{\pm}\)b7 (8... De7 9 2g5! f6 10 2e3 2xb3 11 axb3 leaves White with the advantage; the e6-square is quite vulnerable) 9 \(\text{\tind{\text{\ti}\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\tin}\tint{\ti}}}}}}}}}}}}}}} ②c3?? loses a piece to 9...c5 10 ②f5 c4) and now:

- a) 9...c5 10 **2**d5 **2**xd5 11 exd5 cxd4 12 $\underline{W}e1+!$ (the point of 9 $\underline{\triangle}d2$) and White has regained his piece, leaving Black with a wrecked pawnstructure.
- b) 9...\(\overline{\pi}\)xb3 is better, but after 10 ②xb3 ②f6 11 罩e1 鱼e7 12 ②a5! 罩b8 13 夕xb7 罩xb7 14 豐f3 豐c8 15 夕c3 c6 16 2e2 0-0 17 2d4 White still has a small plus, Smagin-Kupreichik, USSR Ch 1985.

8 axb3 f6 9 ②c3 **Q**b7 10 ②h4 ₩d7 After 10...②e7 11 dxe5! dxe5 (or 11...fxe5 12 f4!) 12 營f3 營d7 13 罩d1 **幽**e6 14 **②**d5 **②**xd5 15 exd5 **幽**f7 (Anand-Agdestein, Baguio City jr Wch 1987), Anand suggests 16 5!

as a way of maintaining the advan-

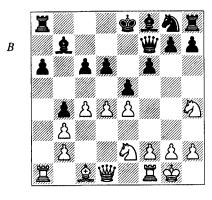
11 夕d5 豐f7

11...包e7 12 Wh5+ forces the king to move, as 12...g6 loses to 13 \Dxg6 hxg6 14 ②xf6+ \$\displaystyle{c} f7 15 \displaystyle{c} xh8. After 11...g6 I like 12 f4!, opening up the position. Then 12...exf4 13 \(\text{\(\text{\(2}\)}\) xf4 g5? fails to 14 \\hbar h5+ \\dig d8 15 \dig xg5!.

12 c4 c6 13 ②c3!

Anand's suggested improvement over 13 De3, which allowed Black to equalize after 13... De7 14 d5 cxd5 15 cxd5 g6 in Anand-Timman, Linares 1993.

13...b4 14 De2 (D)



White's space advantage outweighs the latent power of the bishop-pair.

C)

4...d6 5 c3

Now Black can try:

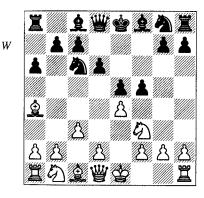
C1: 5...f5 51 52 C2: 5... £d7

The former is ambitious, while the latter is solid. Other continuations are

less important, but should be mentioned:

- a) 5... \$\overline{9}\$ f6 6 d4 b5 7 \overline{9}\$ c2 \overline{9}\$ g4 8 6)bd2 is better for White, who will continue with \(\mathbb{I} = 1, \overline{Q} f1 \) and \(\overline{Q} \) g3, harassing the bishop.
- b) 5... \(\hat{2}\) g4 6 h3 \(\hat{2}\) h5 7 d4 b5 8 \(\hat{2}\) c2 reaches line 'a'.
- c) 5...g6 is a reasonable move. After 6 d4 2d7 we have transposed to Line C22.

C1) 5...f5(D)



6 exf5 \(\text{\pi} xf5 \) 7 0-0 \(\text{\pi} d3 \)

The key move in Black's plans. Black must stop White playing an early d4, since otherwise White's quicker development and Black's weaknesses would soon tell. White must now spend some time extracting this annoying bishop.

8 \(\mathbb{\textit{\Pm}}\)e1 \(\mathbb{\Pm}\)e7

It's imperative to block the e-file. No one plays 8... 266 here, and I think it must be because of the unpleasant 9 ②d4! 曾d7 10 曾f3, when Black's position is on the point of collapse.

9 \(\text{c} \)c2!

The most sensible approach, and the one favoured by theory. The bishop is eliminated and White can complete his development. The more ambitious 9 Ze3 leads to very unclear consequences after 9...e4 10 Del 2g5 11 ②xd3!? ②xe3 12 ②b4 ②xf2+! 13 \$\delta xf2 \delta h4+ 14 \delta g1 \delta h6, when White has to be very careful, e.g. 15 \(\mathbb{Y}\)f1? ②g4 16 營f4 罩f8 17 營g3 罩f1+!! 18 會xf1 ②xh2+19 營xh2 資xh2 0-1 Adams-Piket, Wijk aan Zee 1991.

9...\\(\phi\)xc2 \(\phi\)f6 11 d4 0-0 Other moves include:

- a) 11...exd4 12 cxd4 0-0 13 20c3 \$h8 14 包g5! වxd4 15 > d3 h6 16 ₩xd4 hxg5 17 皇xg5 ₩d7 18 ②e2!, planning 2f4, leaves White with an unquestionable advantage.
- b) 11...e4 12 2g5 d5 13 f3 h6 14 ②h3 0-0 (14...exf3? 15 ₩g6+ is very strong) 15 2d2 exf3 16 2xf3 \dotsdowd7 (16... \(\textit{\textit{\textit{\textit{2}}}} \) \(\textit{\textit{2}} \) \(\textit{\textit{2}} \) \(\textit{\textit{2}} \) \(\textit{2} \) \(\textit{2 會h8 19 營xh6+ 包h7 20 包fg5 營d7 21 **Ze6 Zae8 22 Zae1 Zxe6 Z3 Zxe6 Zg8** 24 ②xh7 \wightarrow xh7 25 \wightarrow f6+ \wightarrow g7 26 **營**h4+ 營h7 27 **區**h6 1-0 A.Sokolov-Anić, French Cht 1994) 17 Wg6! Wg4 18 豐xg4 ②xg4 19 ②f4 罩fd8 20 ②e6 \(\begin{aligned}
 \begin{aligned}
 \begin{alig initiative persists, Leko-Yusupov, Vienna 1996.

12 d5! e4

The best move. 12... 2xd5 fails to 13 ₩b3, while 12...�b8? 13 ᡚg5 ₩c8 14 c4 is obviously bad for Black.

13 夕g5 夕e5 14 夕e6 營d7 15 夕d2!

Black's idea was 15 ②xf8?! 豐g4! with dangerous counterplay, e.g. 16 ②e6? ②f3+ 17 當f1 豐xg2+!.

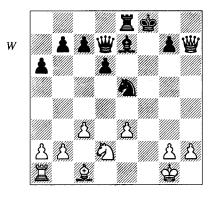
15...e3

Anand gives 15... 2d3 16 Exe4! 2xe4 17 2xe4 2xc1 18 2xf8 Exf8 19 Exc1, when White is a clear pawn up, while 15... Efc8 16 2xe4 2xd5 17 24g5 2xg5 18 2xg5 is slightly better for White, according to Yusupov.

16 \(\mathbb{Z}\xe3 \(\Omega \xd5 \) 17 \(\Omega \xe3 \) 18 \(\mathbb{Z}\xe3 \) 18 \(\mathbb{Z}\

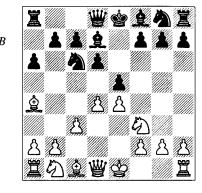
Grabbing material with 19 ₩h8+ \$\psi f7 20 \psi xa8 once again grants Black serious play after 20...\(\Delta\)xg2!.

19...**E**e8 (D)



In Anand-Yusupov, Wijk aan Zee FIDE Ct (5) 1994, White played 20 e4 and after 20...d5? 21 包b3! Black was already facing big problems with his airy king. However, 20...全f6! is a tougher nut to crack, e.g. 21 營h8+会f7 22 營h5+会g8 23 包b3 包f7 24 全d2 營a4 and Black has consolidated and is ready to pluck off White's weak e4-pawn. In the later game Almasi-Winants, Wijk aan Zee 1995, White

C2) 5...**≜**d7 6 d4 (D)



Here Black can play:

6... êe7 is inferior. After 7 0-0 \$f6 8 d5 ②ce7 9 c4 ②g6 10 ②c3 White has a space advantage and Black's pieces are tangled up on the kingside, Ivkov-Kolarov, Moscow OL 1956.

C21)

6...**∮**]ge7 7 **≜**e3

This move is more flexible than 7 0-0, although White can still count on an edge after 7...公g6 8 d5 公b8 9 c4 全e7 10 公c3 0-0 11 全xd7 公xd7 12 營c2 公h4 13 公xh4 全xh4 14 b4 全g5 15 至b1 全xc1 16 至fxc1, Van der Wiel-Short, Amsterdam 1991.

7...**∮**]g6

In Anand-Yusupov, Wijk aan Zee FIDE Ct (3) 1994, Black tried 7...h6 but failed to equalize after 8 ②bd2 g5 (8...②g6!? may be worth a look) 9 dxe5 dxe5 10 h4 g4 11 ②h2 h5 12 ②hf1 ②g6 13 g3 ②e7 14 ②c2 ②e6 15 ③b3 營d7 16 ②xe6 资xe6 17 營b3. In the endgame Black's pawn moves on the kingside will leave serious weaknesses.

8 h4!

This is a very useful restricting move. The white pawns aim to restrain the black pieces.

8...h5

Other moves for Black include:

a) 8...\$e7 9 g3! h6 10 d5 \$\infty\$b8 11 \$\infty\$c2 \$\infty\$g4 12 \$\infty\$bd2 \$\infty\$d7 13 \$\infty\$f1 \$\infty\$f6 14 \$\infty\$lh2 \$\infty\$d7 15 \$\infty\$d2 h5 16 a4 and White has achieved a healthy space advantage, while Black has no immediate pawn-break, Milos-Magomedov, Moscow OL 1994.

b) 8... \(\text{\text{\text{\$\text{\$\geq}}} 4 \) \(\text{\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\geq}}} 2 \) \(\text{\text{\$\text{\$\geq}}} 2 \) \(\text{\text{\$\text{\$\geq}}} 2 \) \(\text{\text{\$\geq}} 2 \) \(\t

9 g3

Dolmatov also proposes 9 ②g5 ♣e7 10 ♠b3 as a simple way to achieve the advantage.

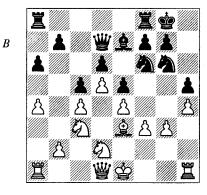
9...**≜**e7 10 d5 **②**b8 11 **≜**xd7+ **②**xd7

Reaching a typical blocked position where the exchange of light-squared bishops has favoured White. Another factor in White's favour is that the knight on g6 is out of play.

12 2 fd2 2 f6 13 f3 0-0 14 c4 c5

Preventing the standard attacking scheme of ②c3, b4, ②b3 and c5.

15 公c3 營d7 16 a4 (D)



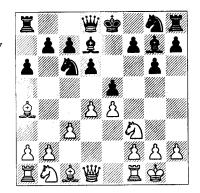
Topalov-Yusupov, Novgorod 1995. White has more space and can play on both sides of the board.

C22)

6...g6 7 0-0 **\Delta**g7 (D) 8 **\Delta**e1

This is by no means the only move:

a) 8 d5 ②ce7 9 ②xd7+ ₩xd7 10 c4 h6 11 ②c3 f5 12 exf5 gxf5 (12...②xf5 13 ②e4 ②f6 14 ②xf6+ ③xf6 15 ②d2 0-0 16 ②e4 and the knight perches very nicely on e4, Short-Spassky, London 1986) 13 ②h4 ②f6! (earlier only 13...②f6 had been played, but 14 f4 e4 15 ②e3 0-0 16 h3 c5 17 dxc6



bxc6 18 we2 leads to a pleasant position for White, Fischer-Filip, Curaçao Ct 1962) 14 f4 e4 15 全3 全xh4 16 wh5+ 包g6 17 wxg6+ wf7 18 wxf7+ 空xf7 and Black has equalized, Ye Jiangchuan-Azmaiparashvili, Erevan OL 1996.

b) 8 鱼e3!? 包f6 (or 8...包ge7 9 d5 包b8 10 c4 0-0 11 包c3 with a slight advantage for White) 9 包bd2 0-0 10 dxe5 ②xe5 11 ②xe5 dxe5 12 f3 鱼xa4 13 豐xa4 豐d3 14 置fe1 置fd8 15 豐b3 豐b5 16 包c4 包e8 17 置ad1 with a faint edge to White, Topalov-Azmaiparashvili, Madrid 1996.

8... ②ge7

After 8... ②f6 White could continue 9 d5 or try 9 ②xc6!? ③xc6 10 dxe5 ③xe4 11 exd6, when Black should sacrifice a pawn with 11...0-0 12 dxc7 ≝xc7, as 11... ≝xd6 12 ≝xd6 cxd6 13 ⑤fd2! 0-0 14 〖xe4 clearly favours White.

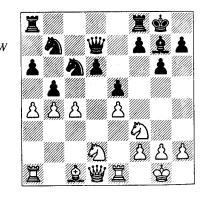
9 d5

9 堂e3 is an important alternative. Then after 9...0-0 10 ②bd2 豐e8 11 堂b3 b6 12 dxe5 dxe5 13 ②c4 堂h8 14 豐c1 堂g4 15 ②g5, 15...h6 16 h3! 堂d7 17 ②f3 堂h7 18 a4 led to a small advantage for White in Karpov-Spassky, Bugojno 1986, but 15...置d8 16 h3 堂c8, as in Boudy-Smagin, Skopje 1987, looks to be an improvement for Black.

9... 2a5!?

9... Øb8 10 **Q**xd7+ Øxd7 11 **Q**e3 h6 12 Øfd2 0-0 13 c4 f5 14 f3 was slightly better for White in J.Polgar-Spassky, Budapest (4) 1993.

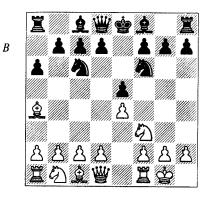
10 \(\textit{\textbf{\textit{2}}}\)xd7+\(\textit{\textit{W}}\)xd7 11 \(\textit{\textit{D}}\)bd2 b5 12 b4 \(\textit{\textit{D}}\)b7 13 a4 0-0 14 c4 c5! 15 dxc6 \(\textit{\textit{D}}\)xc6 (D)



Zso.Polgar-Kamsky, New Delhi 1990. Now White can keep the advantage with 16 \(\hat{L}\)a3.

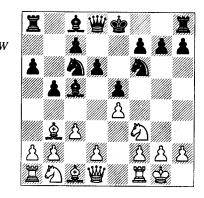
6 Møller and Arkhangelsk Variations

1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 ②b5 a6 4 ②a4 ②f6 5 0-0 (D)



The Arkhangelsk Variation (5...b5 6 \(\Delta b3 \) \(\Delta b7 \) and the Møller Variation (5...\(\preceq\)c5 or 5...b5 6 \(\preceq\)b3 \(\preceq\)c5) represent ambitious plans of development by Black. In particular, the variation 5...b5 6 \(\Delta \) b3 \(\Delta \) c5 has in the last few years become increasingly popular at the highest levels, so much so that it's even threatening to become Black's main reply to the Lopez. The closely related Arkhangelsk went through a similar vogue, although on a slightly smaller scale, in the early 1990s. Both variations can lead to very sharp play. Against these lines, I'm recommending that White should play c3 and d4, but care is needed with move-orders.

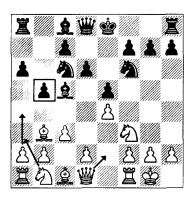
White Plays d4: Black Reacts with ≜b6



In this theoretical position, if White plays 8 d4 Black reacts with 8... \(\Delta \) b6!, maintaining the pawn on e5 and keeping the pressure on d4. If Black were forced to play 8... exd4, relinquishing the centre, then his whole strategy would have been at fault. 8... \(\Delta \) b6 works through tactical means, as can be seen in the theory section.

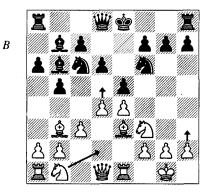
White Attacks with a4

With Black's bishop on c5 and knight on c6 (see diagram overleaf), there is no real opportunity for Black to link his pawn-chain with ...c5. This can in fact leave the b5-pawn rather isolated and vulnerable to attack. One of White's



weapons in these variations is to attack the pawn with an early a4. This assault can be sustained by moves such as ②a3 and 曾e2.

White Protects d4 with 2e3



In some variations White will try to negate the pressure from the b6-bishop by playing \$\omega\$e3. This protects the d4-pawn and thus allows White to continue to develop smoothly with \$\omega\$bd2. Often White will play h3, in order to prevent ... \$\omega\$g4. With the white bishop on e3, Black has to be wary of the

possibility of d5, followed by \(\frac{1}{2}\)xb6, which would leave Black with doubled pawns.

The Theory of the Møller and Arkhangelsk Variations

1 e4 e5 2 � f3 � c6 3 ₤ b5 a6 4 ₤ a4 � f6 5 0-0

56

We now consider:

A: 5...d6

B: 5...\(\delta\)c5 57

C: 5...b5 59

A)

5...d6

This delayed version of the Steinitz Defence is not very popular.

6 **≝e**1

Also possible is 6 c3. After 6... d7 7 d4 g6 8 He1 Black has two possibilities:

- a) 8... ≥ g7 transposes to Chapter 5, Line C22.
- b) 8... **2** 67 9 **2** bd2 **2** g7 10 **2** f1 0-0 11 **2** g5 h6 12 **2** h4 **2** e8 13 **2** c2 **2** h5 14 **2** e3 is slightly better for White, Jansa-Psakhis, Bor 1985.

6...b5

Seizing the chance to exchange the Lopez bishop. Other tries are:

b) 6... 全e7 7 c3 全g4 8 h3 全h5 9 全xc6+ bxc6 10 d4 exd4 11 cxd4 0-0 12 公c3 星e8 13 全f4 營d7 14 星c1 h6 15 營d3 with a small plus, Tal-Kuijpers, Moscow 1963.

7 皇b3 ②a5

7... ♠e7!, transposing to the mainline Closed Lopez, discussion of which starts in Chapter 9, is Black's best course.

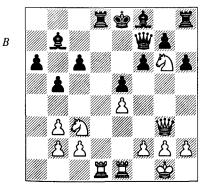
8 d4 ②xb3 9 axb3 **2**b7 10 **2**g5 h6 11 **2**xf6 **2**0c3 c6

12... 2e7 13 2d5 2xd5 14 exd5 exd4 15 2xd4 0-0 16 2c6 leaves the knight far superior to the bishop.

13 Wd3 We7 14 dxe5 dxe5 15 Zad1

Threatening 16 ② xe5; to meet this Black is forced into an ugly pawn move.

15...f6 16 公h4 罩d8 17 豐g3 豐f7 18 公g6 (D)



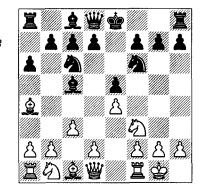
Konstantinopolsky-Efremov, corr 1955. White's lead in development is the most important factor in the position, leaving him with a clear advantage.

B

5...**≜**c5

The advantage of this particular move-order is that the variation 5...b5 6 \(\Delta \) b3 \(\Delta \) c5 7 a4 is avoided. On the other hand, White also has extra possibilities now.

6 c3 (D)



6...b5

Other moves are known to be bad:
a) 6... 全 7 7 d4 ② xe4 8 置 e1 f5 9 ② bd2 0-0 10 ② xe4 fxe4 11 全 g5 營 e8 12 置 xe4 d6 13 dxe5 營 g6 (13... 全 f5 14 置 f4 dxe5 15 置 xf5 置 xf5 16 營 b3+ wins) 14 置 f4 置 xf4 15 全 xf4 全 g4 16 營 b3+ 營 f7 17 ② g5 營 xb3 18 全 xb3+ 1-0 Capablanca — Milner-Barry, Margate 1935.

b) 6... b6 is an improvement, as the bishop shields the b7-pawn from attack. Nevertheless, White can still continue with 7 d4 2xe4 8 Le1 f5 9 2bd2 0-0 10 2xe4 fxe4 11 Lxe4 d6 12 Lg5 Le8 13 dxe5 Lf5 14 Lf4, when 14... h5 15 Ld5+ Le8 16 Lxc6 bxc6 17 Lxc6 is clearly better for White, while the superior 14... dxe5

15 營d5+ 營e6 16 營xe6+ 鱼xe6 17 置xf8+ 置xf8 18 鱼xe6 bxe6 19 鱼e3 still leaves Black with many pawn weaknesses.

7 **⊈**c2!?

7 ♠b3 transposes to Line C.

The text-move is an attempt to take advantage of Black's move-order. Black can try:

B1: 7...**d5!**? 58 **B2:** 7...**d6** 59

B1)

7...d5!? 8 d4!

Reacting immediately in the centre steers the game into very tactical waters. Less convincing is 8 exd5, when Black makes use of the bishop's absence from b3 with 8... \widetilde{\psi}xd5!, followed by ...0-0, solving all his opening problems.

8...dxe4 9 🖾xe5

9 dxe5 is also interesting, when 9...exf3 10 ₩xd8+ ᡚxd8 11 exf6 appears good for White. A stronger possibility is Lutz's suggestion 9... wxd1 10 \(\mathbb{Z}\) xd1 \(\oldsymbol{\text{\tint{\text{\ti}\text{\texi}\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\texit{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\tex{ try 11 \$\dispxf2\$, but after 11...\$\dispxf2\$4+ 12 會g3 exf3 13 皇e4 ②gxe5 14 皇f4 單b8 15 gxf3 \(\text{\frac{1}{2}}\)e6 White has little else but to regain the pawn with 16 \(\exists xc6+\) ②xc6 17 \(\textit{\textit{\textit{\textit{\textit{\text{\ti}\text{\ti}}}\titt{\text{\text{\text{\text{\texi{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\texi}\titt{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\texit{\text{\tet sition) 11... 2g4 12 2xe4 2b7 and Black seems OK. For example, the continuation 13 h3 ②e3+ 14 \dispxf2 ②xd1+15 \$\displaye2 0-0-0 16 \$\displaybd2 \$\displayxc3+!\$ 17 bxc3 \(\mathbb{Z}\) he8 leaves Black well coordinated.

9...②xe5 10 dxe5 ₩xd1 11 ¤xd1 ②g4 12 £xe4 ②xf2

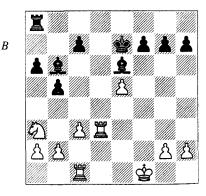
Other moves:

- a) 12...\$\overline{\pi}xf2+ 13 \$\overline{\pi}f1\$ \$\overline{\pi}b8\$ 14 h3 \$\overline{\pi}e3+ 15 \$\overline{\pi}xf2\$ \$\overline{\pi}xd1+ 16 \$\overline{\pi}e2\$ is clearly better for White.
- b) 12... \$\begin{align*} \text{b8 } 13 \\ \text{c6+} \\ \text{\$\text{e}} 7 \\ 14 \\ \text{cg5+} \\ \text{\$\text{e}} 6 \\ 15 \\ \text{ch4} \\ \text{cxe5} \\ 16 \\ \text{cd5+} \\ \text{\$\text{e}} 6 \\ 19 \\ \text{cg3+} \\ \text{\$\text{e}} 6 \\ 20 \\ \text{ch5} \\ 3, \text{ when Black's slightly vulnerable king is enough to give White the faintest of edges, Shirov-Ivanchuk, Monaco Amber rpd 1998.

13 &c6+ \$e7 14 \(\mathbb{L}\)d5 \(\mathbb{L}\)b6 15 \(\mathbb{L}\)xa8 \(\mathbb{L}\)d3+

15... \(\) e6? 16 \(\) d4 \(\) d3 17 \(\) g5+f6 18 \(\) e4 \(\) xe5 19 \(\) e3 was winning for White in Lutz-Onishchuk, Bundesliga 1996/7. The text-move is Lutz's suggested improvement.

16 \$f1 \(\times \text{xc1} \) 17 \(\times \text{a3} \) \$\times \(\times \text{6} \) 18 \$\times \text{xc1} \) \$\times \text{ad3} \((D) \)



Black's two bishops and the pawn weaknesses on a2 and e5 give Black some compensation for the exchange, although it's questionable whether this is enough. In his analysis Lutz gives 19... 2xa2 20 c4 b4 21 c5 2a7 22 2c4 2xc5 23 2a5 2b6 24 2c6+2f8 25 2xb4 2e6 26 2c6, with a

clear advantage to White. Onishchuk was not sufficiently put off the line, however, and later repeated it. He preferred 19... £65 20 Edd1 £g4 21 Ed3 £f5 22 Edd1 £g4, when the players agreed to a draw in N.Mariano-Onishchuk, Jakarta 1997. Of course White could try to continue, by moving his rook off the d-file, but this would give Black counterchances with ... Ed8. It seems that more practical examples of 7...d5 are required before any real assessment can be given.

B2)

7...d6 8 d4 \(\text{\(\text{\(b\)}\) b6 9 h3

It's worth expending a tempo to prevent ... £ g4, so that White's pawn-centre can be kept intact.

9...0-0 10 **≜**e3!?

One advantage of having the bishop on c2 is that the e4-pawn is protected. Thus White need not rush to play ②bd2, but can develop this bishop first, lending crucial support to the d4-pawn.

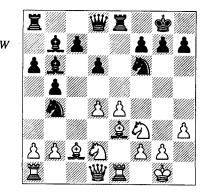
10...≜b7 11 Øbd2 ⊑e8 12 ⊑e1 exd4

The critical test of White's play, although it may not be best. Alternatives:

- a) 12...h6 13 a3 ≜a7 14 b4 Ød7 15 Øb3 is better for White, Rõtšagov-Ziegler, Gothenburg 1998.
- b) 12...\(\mathbb{E}\)b 13 a3 h6 14 \(\mathbb{E}\)e 2 and now 14...\(d5?!\) 15 \(\inftige\)xe5 dxe4 16 \(\inftige\)g4 \(\inftige\)h7 17 \(\inftige\)xe4 \(\mathbb{E}\)xe4 18 \(\inftige\)xe4 f5 19 d5! gave White a very strong attack in Nunn-Hector, Oxford 1998. Nunn suggests 14...\(\mathbb{E}\)d7 as being a more cautious way for Black to play, giving

15 d5 包e7 16 a4 单xe3 17 豐xe3 c6 18 axb5 cxb5 19 b4 with a small plus to White.

13 cxd4 **(D)**



14 **≜**g5!

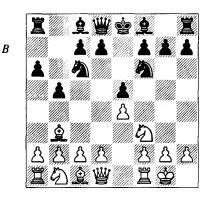
Of course it would be nice to retain the bishop with 14 兔b1, but Black seems to be able to grab the e-pawn with 14...兔xe4. Nunn then gives 15 ②xe4 ②xe4 16 徵b3 c5 17 兔xe4 冨xe4 18 ②g5 (18 a3 c4! 19 徵xb4 兔a5 is one of Black's defensive resources) 18...單e7 19 dxc5 dxc5 20 罩ad1 營e8 and Black defends.

14...②xc2 15 ₩xc2 h6 16 �h4

Black has obtained the two bishops, but has been forced to relinquish the centre and in addition faces a nasty pin on the h4-d8 diagonal. The game Jansa-Martinovsky, Wrexham 1998 continued 16...g5 17 \(\Delta\)g3 \(\Delta\)h5 18 \(\Delta\)h2 \(\Delta\)f4 19 \(\Delta\)xf4 gxf4 20 e5 dxe5 21 dxe5 and Black was already in serious trouble.

C)

5...b5 6 \(\D \)



Now:

C1: 6... 2c5 60 C2: 6... 2b7 64

Before moving on to the main lines, two other very natural moves must be considered:

- a) 6...d6 attempts to steer the game into a closed defence, but with Black still having the option to fianchetto his f8-bishop. Now 7 2 g5 looks very appetizing, but after 7...d5! 8 exd5 2d4 9 **E**e1 (or 9 c3 **②**xb3 10 **豐**xb3 **Q**d6 11 d3 **\$**f5) 9...**\$**c5 10 **\$**xe5+ **\$**f8 Black's counterplay cannot be underestimated. White should probably be content with 7 c3, when 7... \(\ell \)e7! transposes to the main-line Closed Lopez. while 7... ②a5 8 ♠c2 c5 9 d4! (no need to waste a tempo on h3) 9...\subseteq c7 10 ②bd2 g6 11 b4 cxb4 12 cxb4 ②c6 13 **≜**b2 **≜**g7 14 **≡**c1 0-0 15 **≜**b3 was better for White in Suetin-Ragozin, USSR Ch 1954.
- b) 6...\$\delta e7\$ is another attempt to channel the game into a normal Closed Lopez. The idea of this moveorder is to deny White the possibility

of playing the Delayed Exchange Variation Deferred (which arises after 5...\$\delta e7 6 \delta xc6). White can either return to the main line with 7 \$\mathbb{Z} e1\$ or attempt to punish Black's move-order with 7 \$\delta 4!?:

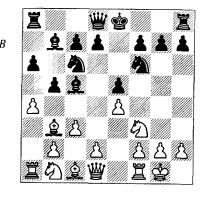
- b1) 7...\(\infty\) xe4 transposes to the Open Defence.
- b2) 7...exd4?! 8 e5! 20e4 (or 8...2g4 9 2d5 2b7 10 h3 2h6 11 2xd4) 9 2d5 20c5 10 2xd4 2b7 11 2f5 gives White a large advantage.
- b3) 7...d6 8 c3 and now Black has two moves:
- b31) 8... \(\textit{\textit{g}} 4 9 \text{ h3! } \text{\text{\text{\$x}}} 6 0... \text{\text{\$h}} 5 10 \text{ d5 } \text{\text{\$a}} 5 11 \text{\$\text{\$c}} 2 \text{ c6 } 12 \text{ dxc6 } 0-0 13 \text{\text{\$b}} \text{bd2} \text{\$\text{\$w}} c7 14 \text{\$\text{\$e}} 1 \text{\$\text{\$w}} xc6 \text{ and now } 15 \text{\$\text{\$c}} f1, \text{ with the idea } \text{\$\text{\$\text{\$g}} 3\$, gains useful time on the bishop) 10 \text{\$\text{\$w}} xf3 \text{ exd4 } 11 \text{\$\text{\$w}} g3 0-0 \text{ (or } 11...g6 12 \text{\$\text{\$a}} d5 \text{\$\text{\$w}} d7 13 \text{\$\text{\$a}} h6 \text{\$\text{\$\text{\$b}} 8 14 f4 \text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$c}} 48 15 \text{\$\text{\$c}} d2} \text{ with a strong attack, Tal-Teschner, Vienna Echt 1957) 12 \text{\$\text{\$a}} h6 \text{\$\text{\$\text{\$c}} 8 13 \text{\$\text{\$\text{\$c}} d5 \text{\$\text{\$w}} d7 14 \text{\$\text{\$w}} g4 \text{\$\text{\$w}} xg4 15 \text{ hxg4 gxh6 } 16 \text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$c}} 6 dx c3 17 \text{\$\text{\$\text{\$c}} 3 \text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$c}} 8 18 \text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$c}} 48 19 f3} and White has a massive bind, Gligorić-Rossetto, Portorož IZ 1958.}
- b32) 8...0-0 9 Dbd2 (attempting to gain on normal Closed lines by doing without h3) 9... Le8 (or 9... Lg4 10 h3 Lh5 11 d5 Da5 12 Lc2 c6 13 dxc6 Lc7 14 Le1, intending Df1-g3) 10 a3!? Lf8 11 Le1 g6 12 Lc2 Lg7 13 d5 Da5 14 b4 Db7 15 c4 Ld7 16 Lb2 and White was slightly better in Hjartarson-Adams, Munich 1993.

C1)

6...**£**c5 7 c3

Move-orders are very important here. Another major line begins with 7

a4. Then 7... \$\mathbb{L}\$b8 8 c3 d6 transposes to Line C12, leaving 7... \$\mathbb{L}\$b7 as Black's main other move. After 7... \$\mathbb{L}\$b7 White may proceed with the restrained 8 d3 followed by \$\mathbb{L}\$c3, leading to a system which I'm not advocating for White. Instead White can also play the tricky 8 c3!? (D).



Then 8...d6 leads to Line C11 (this in fact was the actual move-order of Emms-Godena). So it seems that 7 a4 avoids the popular 8... g4 variation, yet I can find hardly any examples of this move-order, which is very puzzling. The only question is whether Black can exploit the move-order himself.

As well as 8...d6 Black can try:

- a) 8... 2b6 9 d4 2xe4 10 dxe5 looks good for White, e.g. 10... 2a5 11 2d5!, 10... 2e7 11 2g5 and 10...0-0 11 2d5 in each case White has the initiative.
- b) 8...0-0 9 d4 \(\Delta \)b6 10 dxe5 \(\Delta \)xe4 11 \(\Delta \)d5 transposes to line 'a'.
- c) 8... ②xe4 (the critical test) 9 豐e2 d5 (9... ②a5 10 鱼c2 and 9...f5 10 d3

②xf2+ 11 \$h1 are favourable to White) 10 d3 ②xf2+ (10...①f6 11 d4 ②b6 12 dxe5 is clearly better for White) 11 \$h1 ②g3+ (or 11...②c5 12 營xf2 ②xb3 13 ②d4!) 12 hxg3 ③xg3 with a critical position where Black has three pawns for the white piece. However, it seems that White can continue to attack with 13 ②g5!, ready to meet 13...h6 with 14 營h5!.

Practical tests are needed, but it seems that 7 a4 \(\delta\) b7 8 c3 is a very playable alternative for White.

7...d6

Reinforcing the e5-pawn, thus allowing the bishop to retreat when attacked by White's d4 advance. Other moves give White more options:

- a) 7...0-0 is hardly ever seen. One line that looks good for White is 8 d4 全b6 9 公xe5 公xe5 10 dxe5 公xe4 11 全d5 營h4 12 全e3! 全xe3 13 fxe3 c6 14 宣f4! and the best Black can do is 14...公f2 15 營e2 營g5 16 全xf7+ 黨xf7 17 營xf2, with 公d2-e4 to follow.
- b) 7... 2xe4 8 d4 \(\alpha \) b6 and probably the simplest here is 9 dxe5 0-0 10 \(\alpha \) d5 with a clear plus.

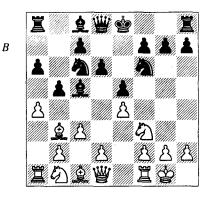
8 a4 (D)

An active waiting move. I imagine it should be asked what's wrong (if anything) with the most natural move here. Things may always change, but currently 8 d4 is not the most popular move. After 8... 6 b6 White can choose from:

- a) 9 \(\text{\textit{g}} \text{5} \) h6 10 \(\text{\text{\$h}} \text{4} \) g5! 11 \(\text{\$g} \text{3} \) and now both 11...\(\text{\$g} \text{4} \) and 11...0-0 are fine for Black, according to theory.
- b) 9 h3 \(\text{\$\text{b}} \) 10 \(\text{\$\text{\$\text{de}}\$} \) (10 \(\text{\$\text{\$\text{de}}\$} \) is impossible here owing to the simple

10...②xe4!) 10...0-0 11 单g5 h6 12 单h4 單e8 13 dxe5 ②xe5 14 ②xe5 dxe5 15 ②d2 豐d6 with an equal position, Zapata-Godena, Erevan OL 1996.

- c) 9 dxe5 2xe5 10 2xe5 dxe5 11 \(\mathbb{\mathbb{m}}\xd8+\mathbb{\mathbb{m}}\xd8 12 \mathbb{\mathbb{m}}\xf7 \mathbb{\mathbb{m}}\xf8 13 \mathbb{\mathbb{m}}\xd5 14 exd5 \mathbb{\mathbb{m}}\xf1 15 \mathbb{\mathbb{m}}\xf3 \mathbb{\mathbb{m}}\xf1 \mathbb{m}\xf1 \mathbb{m}\xf2 \mathbb{m}\xf1 \mathbb{m}\xf2 \m
- d) 9 a4!? (a new attempt) 9... 全g4 10 axb5 axb5 11 置xa8 豐xa8 12 h3 全h5 13 d5 包e7 14 全c2 全g6 15 豐e2 c6 16 dxc6 豐xc6 17 置e1 and White was a shade better in Leko-Adams, Dortmund 1998.



Black now has three main replies:

C11: 8...⊈b7 62

C12: 8...**\(\mathbb{E}\)**b8 62

C13: 8...\(\hat{L}\)g4 63

C11)

8...\$b7 9 d4 \$b6 10 \$g5

10 He1 would transpose into the Arkhangelsk Defence, but perhaps White can do without this move.

10...exd4

This is probably the most accurate defence. After 10...h6 11 全xf6 豐xf6 12 全d5 0-0 13 全a3 White has the option of recapturing on d4 with a knight. Wahls-Stern, Binz 1995 continued 13...宣fb8 14 全c2 bxa4 15 罩xa4 a5 16 罩e1 罩e8 17 全e3 with a plus to White.

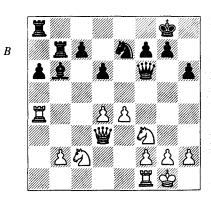
11 cxd4 h6 12 **≜**xf6 **₩**xf6 13 **≜**d5 0-0 14 **⊘**a3

14 ②c3 b4 15 ②e2 ②a5 16 ≜xb7 ②xb7 was OK for Black in Movsesian-Malaniuk, Elista OL 1998.

14...\Ifb8

14...b4 can be answered with 15 © c4.

15 ②c2 bxa4 16 ¤xa4 ②e7 17 ②xb7 ¤xb7 18 ₩d3 (D)



Emms-Godena, Andorra Z 1998. The centre and extra space gives White a small plus.

C12)

8...**E**b8

A non-committal move. The c8-bishop keeps its options open on where it will be developed. Black usually sacrifices the b5-pawn in this line.

9 d4 2b6 10 2a3! 2g4 11 axb5 axb5 12 2xb5 0-0 13 Ie1!

This seems to be White's best try for the advantage. Other moves include:

- a) 13 全e3 exd4 14 cxd4 ②xe4! 15 全d5 豐e8 with an equal position, Nijboer-Piket, Wijk aan Zee 1998.
- b) 13 \(\textit{Q}c2\) \(\textit{Lxf3!}\) 14 \(\textit{W}xf3\) exd4 15 \(\textit{Q}g5\) h6 16 \(\textit{Lh4}\) dxc3 17 bxc3 \(\textit{D}e5\) and Black is fine, J.Polgar-Shirov, Linares 1997.

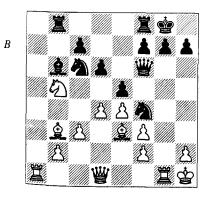
13...**≜**xf3 14 gxf3 **②**h5

Black hopes for play against White's weakened kingside. 14...exd4 15 🖸 xd4 🖾 xd4 16 cxd4 🚊 xd4 doesn't regain the pawn, as White can play the desperado 17 🚊 xf7+!.

15 \$h1 ¥f6 16 罩g1 勺f4

Perhaps Black's best chance lies in the complicated 16...exd4 17 全g5 豐e5 18 全d5, when Wedberg suggests 18...dxc3!? 19 全xc6 全xf2 20 置g2 cxb2 21 置b1 置xb5 22 全xb5 營xb5, although even this line should favour White.

17 **≜**e3 (D)



We are following Svidler-Shirov, Linares 1998. White has secured his position and is still a pawn to the good.

C13)

8...**⊉**g4

A natural move, developing the bishop, connecting queen and rook and preventing d4. Later on, Black can often try to exploit the slight weakness in the white camp due to the move a4. On the minus side, this bishop can also be attacked in the usual way (h3 and \Dark bd2-f1-g3) and Black may have to prepared to exchange it for the knight.

9 d3 0-0 10 h3 &xf3

The other main option is to keep the bishop with 10... h5!?, when White's most logical idea is to begin the usual Lopez knight manoeuvre, viz. 11 Le1 b8 (tempting White to open the afile; otherwise Black might play ...b4) 12 axb5 axb5 13 bd2 and now:

- a) 13...b4!? 14 鱼a4 bxc3 15 bxc3 ②e7 16 ②f1 ②d7 17 ②g3 鱼g6 and now 18 鱼b3 h6 19 鱼b1 全h8 20 ②h4 鱼h7 21 實f3 ②d5 was unclear in Almasi-Shirov, Dresden rpd 1997. I prefer 18 ②h4, grabbing the bishoppair.
- b) 13...置a8!? and now after 14 置xa8 豐xa8 15 包f1 豐a7 16 豐e2?! (16 鱼e3 is equal) 16...b4 17 g4 鱼g6 18 包e3 置b8 19 鱼c2 豐a1! Black had taken over the initiative in Kovačević-Anand, Belgrade 1997. Perhaps the paradoxical 14 置b1!? is a better try for White. With the rooks still on the board Black finds it more difficult to arrange counterplay on the queenside. 14...豐d7 15 包f1 包a5 16 鱼c2 b4 17

②g3 looks nice for White, while White may also keep an edge after 14...豐b8 15 ②f1 豐b6 16 皇e3 皇xe3 17 ②xe3.

11 **營xf3 ②a5** 12 **拿c2** b4

Black tries to exploit the negative side of White playing a4.

13 2 d2

After 13 皇g5!? 單b8 14 公d2 bxc3 15 bxc3 罩b2 16 罩fc1 h6 17 皇h4 豐e7 Black has enough queenside play.

13...**Z**b8 14 **Z**e1

After 14 豐e2 單e8 15 公f3 bxc3 16 bxc3 公b3 17 单xb3 罩xb3 18 d4 exd4 19 cxd4 罩xf3! 20 豐xf3 单xd4 Black has dangerous compensation for the exchange, Anand-Karpov, Lausanne FIDE Wch (2) 1998.

14 \(\mathbb{\pi}\) b1 is an interesting alternative to the text-move, immediately putting the plan of \(\overline{\D}\)b3 into effect (see note to White's 15th move).

14...h6?!

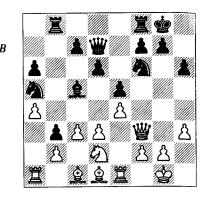
15 句f1 would now allow 15...bxc3 16 bxc3 句b3, so it looks as if Black can play a waiting game. However, White's next move is a very good one. Black should prefer the more active 14...c6!? or 14...曾d7!?, planning to meet 15 罩b1? with 15...b3 16 全d1 豐xa4.

15 \bigain b1!

A very deep idea. If Black does not play ...b3 then White stops this with bb3, exchanges knights and gains control of the important a2-g8 diagonal with the Lopez bishop. Therefore Black plays...

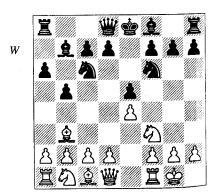
15...b3 16 单d1 營d7 17 里a1! (D)

White has expended two tempi, but the result is that the queenside is sufficiently blocked, leaving White free to



concentrate on the other wing. Leko-Gild.Garcia, Yopal 1997 continued 17...公內?! 18 豐g3 堂h8 19 堂g4! 豐d8 20 公f3 公c6 21 公h4 公e7 22 트d1 公f6 23 d4 堂a7 24 豐d3 a5 25 堂e3 exd4 26 cxd4 公xg4 27 hxg4 豐d7 28 公f5 公xf5 29 gxf5 and White converted his clear positional advantage into victory. Naturally Black's play could have been improved upon, but in any case White is better after 17 宣a1.

C2) 6...**≜**b7 (D)



7 里e1 皇c5

For 7... £e7 see Chapter 8, note to Black's 7th move.

8 c3

Black has two possible replies:

C21: 8...0-0 65 C22: 8...d6 66

C21)

8...0-0

This tricky move-order has recently become more fashionable. Black tries to avoid the critical lines where White plays \(\hat{\text{\text{2}}} \) 3. However, White can also make use of Black's early castling.

9 d4 &b6 10 &g5

The point of Black's move-order is seen if White plays 10 &e3, hoping to reach Line C22 after 10...d6. However, Black need not be so accommodating. Instead of moving the d-pawn, he can use the extra tempo to attack White's centre. After 10...exd4!? 11 cxd4 ②a5! 12 &g5 ③xb3 13 axb3 h6 14 &h4 g5 15 ②xg5 ③xe4 16 ②xe4 ③xh4 Black reached a very comfortable position in Anand-Ivanchuk, Belgrade 1997.

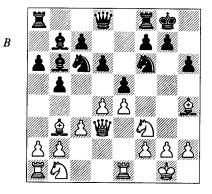
10...h6 11 2h4 d6

11...g5 hopes to drive the position after 12 全g3 d6 to Dolmatov-Beliavsky in the note to White's 10th move in Line C22. However, White shouldn't miss the chance to play 12 包xg5! hxg5 13 全xg5, when Black's survival is doubtful, e.g. 13...全g7 14 互 營 图 8 15 互 g3 and it's all over. This line highlights the drawback of Black's moveorder involving an early ...0-0. The ...g5 lunge can often be met by this effective sacrifice.

11... 查8 is a safer move. White should continue with 12 數d3, for example 12...d6 13 ②bd2 ②a5 14 兔c2 c5 15 d5 c4 16 數e2 g6 17 ②f1 含g7 18 數d2 氧h8 19 h3 數c7 20 ②g3 兔c8 21 ②h2 with an edge to White, Beliavsky-Dorfman, USSR Ch 1975.

12 **₩d3** (D)

Supporting the d-pawn, so that \(\)bd2 can be played. This position can also be reached via 8...d6 9 d4 \(\)b6 10 \(\)g5 h6 11 \(\)h4 0-0 12 \(\)d3, although that move-order allows 11...g5! (see Line C22, note to White's 10th move).



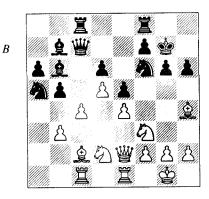
12...Da5

12...g5 once again runs into the piece sacrifice 13 ②xg5! hxg5 14 ♠xg5:

13 **≜**c2 c5 14 d5 c4 15 ₩e2 g6

After 15...g5 White can play 16 \(\times \text{xg5}!? \text{ hxg5 } 17 \) \(\times \text{xg5} \) \(\times \text{g7} 18 \) \(\times \text{f3}, \text{ as in H\"u}\text{biner-Beliavsky, Munich } 1990, \text{ or the more restrained } 16 \) \(\times \text{g3}!? \) \(\times \text{h5} \) \(17 \) \(\text{b4} \) \(\text{cxb3} 18 \) \(\text{axb3} \) \(\times \text{xg3} 19 \) \(\text{hxg3} \) \(\text{f5} \) \(\text{2xd5} 21 \) \(\times \text{bd2} \) \(\text{2c8} 22 \) \(\text{wd3}, \) \(\text{with an advantage to White in both cases.} \)

16 Øbd2 Ic8 17 Iac1 \$g7 18 b4 cxb3 19 axb3 ₩c7 20 c4 (D)



Mecking-Planinc, Mar del Plata 1971. White's extra space guarantees an edge.

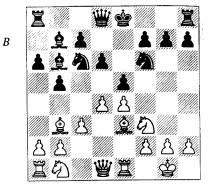
C22)

8...d6

The most common move.

9 d4 \(\text{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\exiting{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\exitin{\ext{\$\text{\$\text{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\ext{\$\exiting{\$\text{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\exitin{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\ext{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\ext{\$\text{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\det{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\ext{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\ext{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\exitin{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\text{\$\exitin{\$\ex

Defending the d-pawn, thus preparing the development of the knight on d2. White has other moves here, but this method of development causes Black most problems. In the early days of the Arkhangelsk, $10 \ge g5$ was very common, but after 10...h6 $11 \ge h4$ g5! $12 \ge g3$ 0-0 was discovered, Black's practical results became very



10...0-0

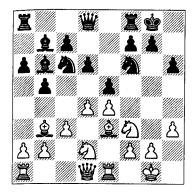
The e-pawn is indirectly protected: 10... 2xe4? loses a piece to 11 d5 followed by 12 \(\text{\text{\text{\text{2}}}} \) xb6.

11 🖾 bd2 h6

This move, preparing ... 294 without allowing 25, is Black's most common here, but there are alternatives:

- a) 11... 2d7 12 \$\overline{9}5\$ \$\overline{9}e7\$ 13 \$\overline{9}f1\$ \$\overline{9}\$h8 14 \$\overline{9}\$g3 f6 15 \$\overline{9}\$e3 is a little better for White, Khalifman-Mikhalchishin, Kuibyshev 1986.
- b) 11...exd4!? 12 cxd4 \(\tilde{\D} b4 13 \)
 \(\tilde{\Box} b1! \cdot c5 14 \(a3 \) \(\tilde{\D} c6 \) (Enders-Mainka,
 German Ch (Binz) 1994) and now I
 like 15 dxc5 \(\tilde{\D} xc5 \) 16 \(\tilde{\D} xc5 \) dxc5 17
 e5 \(\tilde{\D} d5 \) 18 \(\tilde{\D} e4 \) c4 19 \(\tilde{\D} c2 \), with
 chances of a kingside attack.

12 h3 (D)



Now Black has a sizeable choice of ideas:

C221: 12...**Ee8** 67 C222: 12...exd4 67 C223: 12...**Eb8** 68

Less important tries are:

- a) 12... b8 13 d5 2e7 14 2xb6 cxb6 15 2c2 2d7 16 2h4! bd8 17 2f1 (Anand-Kamsky, Las Palmas PCA Ct (3) 1995) and now best for Black seems to be 17...b4! 18 cxb4 2xd5, although White can keep an edge with 19 2g6! fxg6 20 2b3.
- b) 12...②d7 13 a3 ②e7 14 ②a2 ③h8 15 b4 a5 (Short-Kamsky, Linares PCA Ct (6) 1994) and now Hübner suggests 16 dxe5 ②xe3 17 〖xe3 ②xe5 18 ②d4 with a slight advantage to White.

C221)

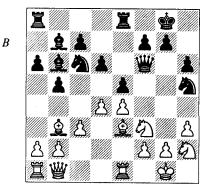
12... **Ze8 13 營b1!**

This is the only decent way to cover the e4-pawn. Both 13 堂c2 and 13 營c2 would allow Black to reply 13...exd4 14 cxd4 ②b4!.

13...**包h**5

Black can attempt to strike back in the centre by means of 13... 2 a5 14 2 c2 c5, but after 15 d5 c4 16 b4! cxb3 17 axb3 White still held the upper hand in Rowson-Emms, British League (4NCL) 1997/8.

14 分f1 響f6 15 勺1h2 (D)



In Becerra Rivero-Nguyen Anh Dung, Erevan OL 1996 Black now went astray with 15...包f4? 16 包g4 豐g6 17 鱼xf4 exf4 18 鱼d5!, when White had a big advantage. More resilient is 15...exd4 16 cxd4 豐g6, although White can still retain the advantage after 17 e5 豐xb1 18 里axb1 dxe5 19 dxe5 包a5 20 鱼xb6 cxb6 21 鱼c2.

C222)

12...exd4

Black immediately relinquishes the centre in order to obtain play on the queenside. Play in this line can become quite sharp.

13 cxd4 \(\times b4 14 \) \(\times b1 c5 15 a3 \) \(\times c6 \)
15...cxd4 16 \(\times xd4 \) \(\times c6 17 \) \(\times c5 \)
16 e5 dxe5 17 dxc5!?

Also possible is 17 dxe5, for example 17... ②d5 18 ②e4 c4 (18... ②xe3? 19 ②f6+!! gxf6 20 營g6+ 哈h8 21 營xh6+ 金g8 22 黨xe3 and White has a mating attack) 19 ②xb6 營xb6 20 ②c2 ②ce7 (20... 當fd8 looks stronger) 21 ②d6 ②c8 22 ②e4 ②e6 23 營d1 and White's pieces are well placed, Scuderi-Karlsson, corr. 1987.

17...**≜**c7

After 17... 2a7 White proceeds with 18 2xh6! gxh6 19 26+ 20 20 2xh6+ 公h7 21 公e4, with a fearsome attack.

After 17...全c7, 18 全xh6 isn't so effective as the black bishop is more in the game on c7. After 18...gxh6 19 營g6+ 全h8 20 營xh6+ 包h7 21 包e4 包d4 22 包xd4 exd4 Black was able to beat off the attack in Khalifman-Malaniuk, Minsk 1985. In the later game Psakhis-Volzhin, Metz 1994, White improved with 18 全c2 包e7 (18...b4, preventing White's next, should be considered) 19 b4! 包fd5 20 營b2 營b8 21 全b3 包g6 22 置ad1 and White's pieces were more active.

C223)

12...**≝b**8

Preparing to answer 13 d5 with 13... ♠ xe3, as after 14 dxc6 ♠ xd2 15 cxb7 the black rook is no longer attacked.

13 \(\text{\(c2 \) \(\text{\(Ee8 \) 14 a3 \)

Eliminating ... 40b4 ideas and so preparing 40f1-g3. We have now reached a position that was discussed in Line B2 (note 'b' to Black's 12th

move). The only difference here is that Black has the move, as White has played \$\oldsymbol{\Delta}a4-b3-c2\$, rather than just \$\oldsymbol{\Delta}a4-c2\$. This extra tempo gives Black better chances of equality.

14...**©**a7

Once again, adding more pressure to e4.

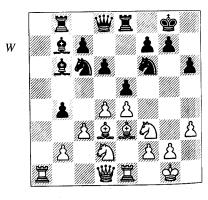
15 a4

Perhaps White should consider keeping the tension with 15 \bullet b1!?.

15...②c6!

Now the b4-square is once again available, the knight is not slow in hopping back. Note that 15...exd4 16 cxd4 ②xe4? loses a piece to 17 ②xe4 ②xe4 18 a5.

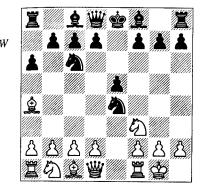
16 axb5 axb5 17 **≜**d3 b4 (D)



Ki.Georgiev-Beliavsky, Yugoslavia 1996 continued 18 d5 bxc3 19 bxc3 ②xe3 20 罩xe3 ②e7 21 c4 c6 22 ②f1 豐c7 with an equal position. White can also consider 18 ②b5 bxc3 19 bxc3 exd4 20 ②xd4 ②xd4 21 cxd4 c6, although this also looks fairly level.

7 The Open Lopez

1 e4 e5 2 Øf3 Øc6 3 &b5 a6 4 &a4 Øf6 5 0-0 Øxe4 (D)

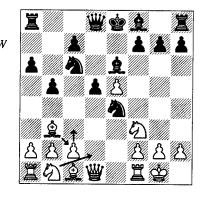


With 5... Exe4 Black basically chooses dynamic counterplay over solid defence. He makes space for his pieces to develop onto active posts and squashes any thoughts White might have of applying the 'Spanish Torture' so often seen in the closed defences.

However, there's a certain price to pay for all this activity. The position becomes open quite quickly and in order not to suffer a quick onslaught down the e-file, Black is forced to compromise his pawn-structure somewhat, leaving White with potential targets to exploit in the middlegame. Nevertheless, the Open Defence has its fair share of supporters. Viktor Korchnoi is probably its most famous adherent, while of the new generation

of top players one could point to Vishy Anand, who employed it in his 1995 World Championship clash with Kasparov and has continued to use it since.

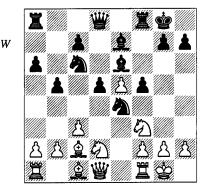
The Strategic Starting Position



This is the typical position, which is reached after 8 moves of the Open Lopez. The first thing to notice is that Black's pieces occupy active squares. Given a few free moves, Black would probably continue with \$\omegaccup{c}\$c5, ...0-0 and perhaps ...f6, to create a semiopen f-file and attack the f2-square. It goes without saying that White must act energetically in the diagram position, else Black could easily take over the initiative once he has completed his development. Here I'm advocating the move 9 \$\omegac{c}{2}\omegacbd{b}d2, which was made

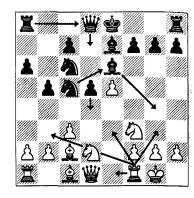
popular by Anatoly Karpov. One of White's main ideas is to put immediate pressure on Black's strong knight on e4. This pressure can be enhanced with such moves as c3 and \(\frac{1}{2}\)c2. Black is asked very early on what to do with this knight.

Black Supports the Knight with ...f5



Black has just played 11...f5, lending support to the under-fire knight. White now has a big decision to make: whether to capture en passant, or to play around the knight and concentrate on the weaknesses in the black camp. On this occasion the main theoretical move is 12 \Db3 (instead of 12 exf6). After 12... Wd7 White can use a tactical trick to justify the move 13 2fd4. Now 13...2xe5? 14 f3 2c5 15 ፲e1 ②c6 16 ②xc6 ₩xc6 17 ②d4 ₩d7 18 b4 drops a piece, so the normal continuation is 13... 2xd4 14 2xd4 c5 15 ②xe6 ₩xe6 16 f3 ②g5 17 a4, when White is slightly better (see the theory section for more on this position).

Black Moves the Knight



On this occasion Black has retreated his knight to c5, where it controls some important squares. One of White's major plans in this position involves the usual knight manoeuvre with (after \(\begin{aligned} \begin{aligned} \alpha \ext{f1-g3/e3}. \\ \text{White's} \end{aligned} \) pieces would then point impressively at the black kingside. In addition, White has the e5-pawn as a spearhead, so it's easy to see that White can often build up a menacing attack against the black king. White also often plays **②b3**, challenging the c5-knight. If this is exchanged, it clears the way for the white queen to go to d3, where it sets up a powerful battery with the bishop against the h7-pawn.

For the reasons outlined above, Black often delays castling in favour of first improving the position of his pieces. For example, Black often plays the move ... \(\Delta g4, \) giving White a pin to think about. This bishop can also be re-routed via h5 to g6, in order to blunt White's attack along the b1-h7 diagonal. This also leaves the e6-square

vacant for the knight to hop back and completely block the e5-pawn. Another common feature is Black doubling behind the d-pawn with ... d7 and ... d8. The idea of this is not only to add extra support to the often-vulnerable d5-pawn, but also to facilitate a possible ... d4 advance. Of course the strength of this advance is always dependent on the placing of the various pieces, but a successful ... d4 will completely free Black's position.

The Theory of the Open Lopez

1 e4 e5 2 **2**f3 **2**c6 3 **2**b5 a6 4 **2**a4 **2**f6 5 0-0 **2**xe4 6 d4 b5

This is by far the most common move, but White must be aware of two other possibilities:

a) 6...exd4 gives us the so-called Riga Variation. This line is very rare, chiefly because the endgame arising from the sequence 7 黨e1 d5 8 ②xd4 ②d6 9 ②xc6 ②xh2+ 10 營h1! (10 ⑤xh2 營h4+ leads to perpetual check) 10...營h4 11 黨xe4+ dxe4 12 營d8+ 營xd8 13 ②xd8+ ⑤xd8 14 ⑤xh2 has been known for many years to favour White.

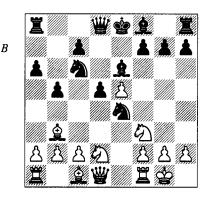
②c3! ②xc3 11 bxc3 h6 (11...營e8 is probably stronger, although I still prefer White after 12 ②d4 營g6 13 營f3) 12 a4 a5 13 黨b1 b6 14 ②d5 ②b7 15 ②d4 黨b8 16 ②b5 ②c5 17 營h5 with a clear advantage, Geller-Kurajica, Wijk aan Zee 1977.

7 **≜**b3 d5

After 7...exd4?! 8 Ze1 d5 White plays the surprising 9 2c3!, after which Black has no good way through the tactics. Following 9...dxc3 10 2xd5 2b7 11 2xe4 2e7 12 Ze2 Black is struggling to castle, while 9...2e6 10 2xe4 dxe4 11 Zxe4 2e7 12 2xe6 fxe6 13 2xd4! 0-0 14 Ze4 2xd4 15 Zxd4 Ze8 16 Ze4 Ze6 17 2e3 left White clearly on top in Fischer-Trifunović, Bled 1961.

8 dxe5 \(\) e6 9 \(\) bd2 \((D) \)

The move which Karpov popularized. It's basically a refinement over the old main line, 9 c3. Black's most active move against that is 9... ♣c5.



However, in the current position (after 9 2bd2), 9...\$c5 is less enticing, as White can immediately head

off into a slightly better endgame. Black's only real attempt to make use of the move-order is with 9... 2c5 10 c3 d4!?, as in Line C. Anyway, I'll start by listing Black's three main replies:

A: 9...**2c5** 72 B: 9...**2e7** 73 C: 9...**2c5** 75

A)

9...**≜**c5

The move that 9 \Dbd2 had been designed to prevent!

10 ②xe4

This line seems to give White a comfortable endgame, with a 'risk-free' but very small advantage. If White wants to keep more pieces on the board, then he should try a queen move, viz.:

- a) 10 We2 gives Black two possible replies:
- a1) 10....童f5 11 a4 b4 (11...置b8 12 axb5 axb5 13 ②xe4 dxe4 14 ②g5 0-0 15 鱼e3 豐e7 16 e6! 鱼xe3 17 exf7+ 章h8 18 豐xe3 h6 19 單a6 ②e5 20 ②e6 置xf7 21 ②d4 鱼c8 22 鱼xf7 鱼xa6 23 豐xe4 gave White an extra pawn in Tkachev-Karolyi, Oakham 1993) 12 ②xe4 鱼xe4 (12...dxe4 13 ②g5 looks quite unpleasant for Black) 13 鱼e3 鱼xe3 14 豐xe3 0-0 15 ②g5 鱼g6 16 罩ad1 and the pressure on d5 proves troublesome for Black, Emms-Gretarsson, Kopavogur 1994.
- a2) 10... 2xd2 (the safest move) 11 2xd2 0-0 12 Zad1 and now:
- a21) 12... 2g4 13 Wd3! 2xf3 14 Wxf3 2xe5 15 Wf5 Ze8 (15... 2g6?! 16 2xd5 2e7 17 2xf7+ Zxf7 18

豐xc5 is clearly good for White, Wahls-A.Mikhalevski, Berlin 1994) 16 全g5 豐c8 17 豐xc8 里axc8 18 里xd5 and the bishop-pair gives White the edge in this ending.

- a22) 12...②e7!? 13 鱼e3 鱼xe3 14 豐xe3 c6 15 h3 ②f5 16 豐f4 (perhaps 16 豐c5!?) 16...豐c7 17 罩fe1 罩ae8 18 c3 f6 19 鱼c2 g6 20 罩e2 (20 ②d4!?) 20...fxe5 21 豐xe5 ②d6 22 豐g3 鱼f5 and Black has just about equalized, Jansa-M.Přibyl, Czech Ch 1996.
- b) The strange-looking 10 We1!? also deserves some attention. The idea is that on e1 the queen is less vulnerable to attack by ... 2d4. Thus 10... 2f5?! 11 2xe4 2xe4 12 2g5! would be in White's favour. Once again the safest way is 10... 2xd2 11 2xd2 0-0. Luther-V.Mikhalevski, Turin 1996 continued 12 Id1 Wd7 13 2g5 d4?! (13...h6 looks stronger) 14 c3 h6 15 2xd4! 2xd4 16 2e3 2f3+ 17 gxf3 Wc6 18 2xc5 Wxc5 19 We4 Iad8 20 Id4 and White converted his extra pawn into victory.

10...dxe4 11 \(\textit{\pi}\)xe6

11 數xd8+ 單xd8 12 ②g5 单d5 13 e6 fxe6 14 单xd5 exd5 15 ②e6 单b6 16 ②xd8 鸷xd8 gives Black good compensation for the exchange, Stisis-A.Mikhalevski, Israeli Cht 1996.

11...**₩xd1**

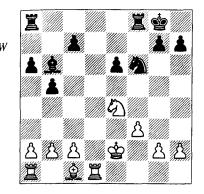
After 11...fxe6, 12 ②g5 \wxd1 leads to the same thing, but White could also consider 12 ②d2!?.

12 Xxd1 fxe6 13 ②g5 0-0 14 ②xe4 \$b6 15 \$\displaystyle{\psi}\$f1

White kept a minute advantage after 15 b3 ②xe5 16 \$\preceq\$f1 ②g4 17 f3 ③f6 (17...②xh2+ 18 \$\preceq\$e2 is clearly better

for White) 18 20g3 20d5 19 c4 bxc4 20 bxc4 in Topalov-Leko, Cap d'Agde rpd 1994.

15...②xe5 16 \$\pmeq\$e2 \$\Omega\$g4 17 f3 \$\Omega\$f6



This is Adams-M.Přibyl, Bundesliga 1995/6. Black has one prominent weakness, the e6-pawn, which is isolated and on a semi-open file, but the activity of his pieces may be just enough to maintain the balance.

B)

9... **≜**e7 10 c3 **②**c5

Other moves include:

- a) 10... dd 11 \(\Delta c 2 \) \(\Delta f 5 12 \) \(\Delta d 4! \) \(\Delta g 6 13 a 4! \) and now after 13... 0-0? 14 \(\Delta x 4 \) \(\Delta x 4 \) \(\Delta x 4 \) 15 axb5 axb5 16 \(\Delta x a 8 \) \(\Delta x 4 \) 18 e6! fxe6 19 \(\Delta x 5 \) Black's wrecked pawn-structure gave White a clear advantage in Luther-Krasenkow, Asti 1996. Stronger is 13... \(\Delta x d 2, \) although White still keeps a plus after 14 \(\Delta x d 2. \)
- b) 10...0-0 11 \(\Delta c 2 \) f5 12 \(\Delta b 3 \) \(\Delta d 7 \) 13 \(\Delta f d 4 \) \(\Delta x d 4 14 \) \(\Delta x d 4 16 \) fxe4 axb3 17 \(\Delta x b 3 \) fxe4

was equal in Grünfeld-Tal, Riga IZ 1979) 14...c5 15 ②xe6 豐xe6 16 f3 ②g5 17 a4 g6 (or 17...置ad8 18 axb5 axb5 19 豐e2 c4 20 鱼e3 with an edge, Beliavsky-Tarjan, Bogota 1979) 18 含h1 豐c6 19 鱼xg5 鱼xg5 20 f4 鱼e7 21 豐f3 and White's protected passed pawn gives him a nice plus, Ricardi-Sorin, Buenos Aires 1996.

11 \(\mathbb{L} \) c2 \(\mathbb{L} \) g4

In these positions Black has many chances to advance the d-pawn, and here is one of the occasions. After 11...d4!? we have:

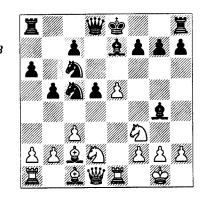
- a) 12 ②e4 d3 13 ②xc5 dxc2 14 ③xd8+ 〖xd8 15 ②xe6 fxe6 16 〖e3 〖d5 17 〖ac1 ②xe5 18 ②xe5 〖xe5 19 〖xc2 ⑤f7 and White has just a tiny edge, Akopian-Daniliuk, St Petersburg 1993.
- b) 12 ②b3 d3 13 ②b1 ②xb3 14 axb3 ②f5 15 ②e3 0-0 16 ②d4 Wd5 17 ②e1 and now 17... ②fd8 18 ③e3 ②xd4 19 cxd4 c5 20 ③xd3 cxd4 21 ③e2 was better for White in Topalov-Piket, Antwerp 1997, but 17...d2!? deserves attention, e.g. 18 ⑤e2 ③xb1 19 ⑥xb1 ②xd4 20 ②xd4 ②g5 21 ②f3 ②f4 with an equal position.

The simple 11...0-0 is not seen very much. In Am.Rodriguez-Todorović, Pančevo 1987 White kept the advantage after 12 ②b3 豐d7 13 ②bd4 ②xd4 14 cxd4 ②e4 15 ②e1 f6 16 f3 ②g5 17 ②d3 fxe5 18 ②xe5 豐d8 19 ②e3.

12 **E**e1 (D)

Black now has two main continuations:

B1: 12...0-0 74 B2: 12...\dd7 75



The advance 12...d4 is not so effective here. After 13 ②b3! d3 (after 13...dxc3 14 ②xc5 ②xc5 15 ②e4 Wxd1 16 Zxd1 ②d7 17 bxc3 White's pieces are very active) 14 ②b1 ②xb3 15 axb3 ②f5 16 ②e3 0-0 17 ②d4 Wd5 (after 17...②xd4 18 ②xd4 ②g6 White wins the pawn with 19 ②xd3 ②xd3 ②xd4 ②0 cxd4 and Black has nothing for the pawn, Geller-Anand, New Delhi 1987.

Another plan for Black is to reroute his bishop to g6. The exchange of the light-squared bishops blunts White's attacking potential. On the other hand the manoeuvre is rather time-consuming and White maintains some advantage after 12...2h5 13 2ft 0-0 14 2g3 2g6 15 2e3 4d7 16 h4! 2e6 17 h5 2xc2 18 4xc2 f6 19 exf6 2xf6 20 h6!.

B1)

12...0-0 13 **Db3**

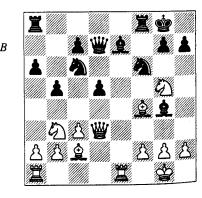
13 2 f1 and 13 h3 are other moves, but I believe that this is the most severe test of 12...0-0.

13...**∮**)e4

After 13...②e6 14 營d3! g6 15 皇h6 置e8 16 置ad1 皇f5 17 營d2 皇xc2 18 營xc2 營d7 19 h4! the pressure against the d5-pawn, coupled with the weak dark squares around the kingside, leaves Black with a miserable position. Emms-Rutherford, Hastings 1995 concluded 19...置ad8 20 h5! 皇f8 21 營d2 ②g7 22 hxg6 hxg6 23 皇g5 皇e7 24 ②bd4 ②xd4 25 cxd4 ②e6? 26 皇f6 置c8? (26...皇xf6 27 exf6 營d6 28 置e5 ②f8 29 置de1 置e6 30 營h6 置xf6 31 ②g5 營d7 32 置1e3 wins for White) 27 營h6 1-0.

14 &f4 f6

A more recent try is 14... \$\begin{align*} \text{A more recent try is } 14... \$\begin{align*} \text{A more r



Now 17...g6? 18 ②xh7! �xh7 19 �xg6+ �h8 20 �ze3 left Black in big trouble in Am.Rodriguez-Milos, Bogota 1991. More resilient is 17...h6

18 ②h7 單f7 (Large-Flear, British Ch (Eastbourne) 1990) and here I like the continuation 19 ②xf6+ 單xf6 20 豐h7+ 查f7 21 童g3!, with the idea of doubling on the e-file. All in all, Black's position looks rather shaky.

B2)

12...₩d7

This queen move is the most popular response. Black delays castling in favour of improving the positioning of his pieces. In particular the rook moves from a8 to d8 to lend further support to the d5-pawn and facilitate its advance.

13 夕f1 單d8 14 夕e3 单h5

Grabbing a pawn by 14... ♠xf3 15 ₩xf3 ᡚxe5 runs into a fearsome attack after 16 ₩g3 ᡚg6 17 ᡚf5!.

15 b4!

White must play aggressively to maintain the initiative. 15 ②f5 0-0 16 ②xe7+ ③xe7 17 ②xe3 ②a4! is known to be OK for Black.

15...\$\e6

15...De4 walks into 16 2xd5!.

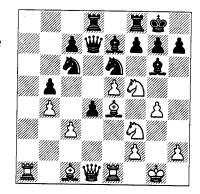
16 g4

16... g6 17 Øf5 0-0 18 a4 d4

After 18... If fe8 White bombards the b-pawn with 19 axb5 axb5 20 2d3 and now both 20... Ib8 21 We2 2cd8

22 ≝a7 d4 23 cxd4 ♠xb4 24 ≝d1, as in Shabalov-Vucić, New York 1993, and 20...♠b8 21 ♠e3, as in Galkin-Sorokin, Russia Cup 1997, are very favourable for White.

19 axb5 axb5 20 **♠e4** (D)



We are following the game Haba-Marin, Budapest Z 1993, which continued 20...宣fe8 21 豐d3 包b8 and now White's most effective way forward is 22 cxd4! 鱼xb4 23 置d1 c6 24 鱼e3, when White's centre looks very powerful indeed.

C)

9...Øc5

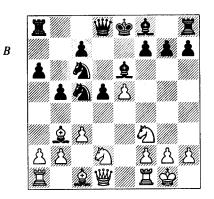
This is Black's most principled choice. He hopes to exploit White's temporary lack of control over d4 and push his d-pawn forward.

10 c3 (D)

10...d4

This is the critical move, but there are many other choices here:

- a) For 10... 2 e7 11 2 c2 see Line B.
- b) 10...2d3 11 We2 2xc1 12 Zaxc1 is good for White since Black has



spent too many moves with his knight just to exchange it for an undeveloped piece.

- c) 10...②xb3 11 ②xb3 ②e7 12 ②fd4! ②xd4 (snatching the pawn with 12...②xe5?! is too risky; after 13 ③e1 ②g6 14 ②xe6 fxe6 15 ②d4 White had a strong initiative in G.Kuzmin-Beliavsky, USSR 1977) 13 cxd4 0-0 14 ②d2, followed by ③c1, and White can attack down the half-open c-file.
- d) 10...g6 11 We2 Qg7 12 2d4! 2xd4 (12...2xe5 13 f4 2c4 14 f5 gxf5 15 2xf5 Zg8 16 2xc4 dxc4 17 Qc2 2d3 18 Qh6 led to a crushing win for White in Karpov-Korchnoi, Baguio Wch (8) 1978) 13 cxd4 2b7 14 Qc2 c5 15 f4 cxd4 16 2b3 Wb6 17 Wf2 0-0 18 2xd4 with an edge to White, Fishbein-Murey, Moscow 1989.
- e) 10... 2g4 (this is the most important of Black's alternatives) 11 2c2 and now:
- e1) 11... e7 transposes into Line B on page 73.
- e2) 11...De6 12 **E**e1 **2**c5 13 **D**f1 **2**h5 14 **D**g3 **2**g6 15 **2**b3 **D**e7 16 h4 gave White a useful initiative in the

game Kovaliov-Kaidanov, Blagove-shchensk 1988.

- e3) 11... 曾d7 12 置e1 置d8!? (once again, 12... 鱼e7 is Line B, while in Leko-Anand, Linares 1999, Black tried another lunge with 12...d4, but was worse after 13 包b3 dxc3 14 豐xd7+ 鱼xd7 15 bxc3) 13 包b3! 包e6 14 a4 鱼e7 15 axb5 axb5 16 豐d3 and now Am.Rodriguez-Kharitonov, Bayamo 1989 continued 16... 置b8?! 17 包fd4 包cxd4 18 cxd4 with a clear plus for White. Stronger is 16... 鱼h5 but after 17 豐xb5 鱼xf3 18 gxf3 包xe5 19 豐xd7+ 包xd7 the bishop-pair grants White an edge.
- e4) 11...d4!? led to an equal position after 12 ②b3 d3 13 兔b1 營d5 14 ②xc5 兔xc5 15 營xd3 營xd3 16 兔xd3 0-0-0 17 兔e4 兔xf3 18 gxf3 ②xe5 in Leko-Anand, Tilburg 1998. This line needs further tests, perhaps with 12 h3 or 12 罩e1!?.

After 10...d4 White has two main alternatives:

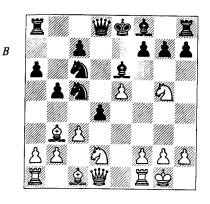
C1: 11 ②g5!? 76 C2: 11 ②xe6 79

The former is the tactical option, whereas the latter leads to more positional play.

C1)

11 🖾 g5!? (D)

This staggering move, which simply leaves a knight en prise, is an invention of Karpov's trainer Igor Zaitsev. It caused a sensation when Karpov unleashed it against Korchnoi in game 10 of their 1978 match. Now Black has:



C11: 11...dxc3 77 C12: 11...单d5!? 78 C13: 11...曾xg5 78

C11)

11...dxc3

This move requires some heavy repair-work after Kasparov's crushing win over Anand in their 1995 World Championship match.

12 ②xe6 fxe6 13 bxc3 ₩d3 14 ②c2!

This move is the prelude to a spectacular rook sacrifice.

14...豐xc3 15 ②b3!! ②xb3

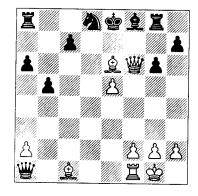
Black can decline the rook, but 15... 查d8 16 全d2 章xd2 17 包xd2 包xe5 (or 17... 曾xe5 18 董e1 曾f6 19 包b3) 18 包b3 gave White the advantage in Khalifman-Hraček, Pärnu 1996.

16 \(\Delta xb3 \(\Od4 \)

After 16... **資**xal White replies with 17 **資**h5+! and now:

a) 17...含d7 18 ②xe6+ 含xe6 19 曾g4+含f7 (19...含d5 20 營d7+ ②d6 21 營f7+含xe5 22 營xg7+含e6 23 資xal wins) 20 營f3+含e6 21 營xc6+ ②d6 22 exd6 營e5 23 ②b2 營xb2 (23... 豐xd6 24 置el+ \$f7 25 豐f3+ \$g6 26 豐g4+ \$f7 27 豐xg7#) 24 置el+ \$f6 25 豐f3+ \$g6 26 豐g4+ \$h6 27 置e6+ 豐f6 (or 27...g6 28 豐f4+ \$h5 29 g4+ \$h4 30 豐h6+ \$xg4 31 置e4+ \$f5 32 豐f4#) 28 h4! and Black must give up a whole queen to avoid mate.

- b) 17...g6 18 \(\mathbb{g}\)f3 and now:
- b1) 18...0-0-0 19 豐xc6 豐xe5 20 豐xa6+ \$b8 (or 20...\$d7 21 \$b2!) 21 \$\text{\$\exitt{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitt{\$\text{\$\ext{\$\ext{\$\text{\$\exitit{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitex{\$\exitit{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitit{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\}\exitit{



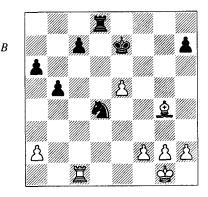
Now 20... ②e7 21 ②d7+! 尝xd7 22 e6+, 20... ②xe6 21 營xe6+ ②e7 22 營xg8+ and 20... ②g7 21 ②f7+ ②xf7 22 營e6+ 含f8 23 ②a3+ win for White. Tougher is 20... 置g7, but 21 ②a3 營xf1+ 22 尝xf1 still leaves Black without a good defence.

17 ₩g4 ₩xa1 18 ♠xe6 Zd8

Black's most resilient defence is 18... ac3! 19 ad7+ af7 20 ae3 ac5,

when White has many promising continuations, but I haven't yet found a clear win.

19 皇h6 豐c3 20 皇xg7 豐d3 21 皇xh8 豐g6 22 皇f6 皇e7 23 皇xe7 豐xg4 24 皇xg4 皇xe7 25 罩c1 (D)



Kasparov-Anand, New York PCA Wch (10) 1995. The endgame is winning for White.

C12)

11...**≜**d5

This is a relatively new idea, found by the Bosnian grandmaster Ivan Sokolov.

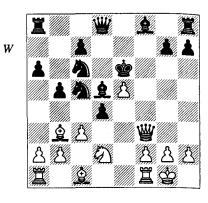
12 ②xf7!?

This flamboyant move is the critical test. 12 单xd5 豐xd5 13 包b3 包xb3 14 axb3 鱼e7 15 包f3 d3 16 鱼e3 0-0 17 鱼d4 單fd8 was equal in Onishchuk-I.Sokolov, Wijk aan Zee 1997, while aggressive moves such as 12 豐g4 and 12 豐h5 are worth investigating.

12... \$\psixf7 13 \psif3+ \$\psie6 (D)

14 9 e4

The latest twist in this variation was seen in Svidler-Anand, Dos Hermanas



1999, where White came up with the stunning idea 14 豐g4+ 空e7 15 e6! and following 15...皇xe6 16 單e1 豐d7 17 皇xe6 ②xe6 18 ②f3 罩e8 19 ②g5 ②d8 20 皇d2! Black was in big trouble, despite his extra piece.

14...**包xb3**

14... ②xe4 15 營xe4 ②e7 16 f4 ②xb3 17 f5+ 含f7 18 axb3 營d5 19 營f4 gives White a strong attack for the sacrificed piece.

15 豐g4+ 會f7 16 豐f5+ 會g8

Not, however, 16... \$\delta = 8? 17 e6! \$\delta \text{xe6} 18 \$\delta \text{xe6+}\$, which was winning for White in L.Dominguez-Rios, Cuba 1996.

17 e6 h6 18 豐f7+ \$h7 19 ②g5+ hxg5 20 豐h5+ \$g8 21 豐f7+

With a draw by perpetual check. The last word has not been spoken on this line.

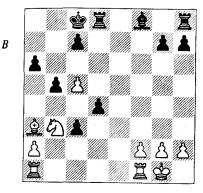
C13)

Returning the piece is Black's best idea. Instead:

a) 12...\$d7 13 \$\overline{0}\$d5 \$\overline{0}\$xd5 \$\overline{14}\$\$ \$\overline{0}\$xd5 + \$\overline{0}\$d6 15 cxd4 \$\overline{0}\$xd4 16 \$\overline{0}\$c4\$\$

left Black in trouble in the game Brøndum – Brinck-Claussen, Denmark 1979.

13 全xe6+ fxe6 14 響xc6 響xe5 15 b4! 響d5 16 響xd5 exd5 17 bxc5 dxc3 18 ②b3 d4 19 全a3 (D)

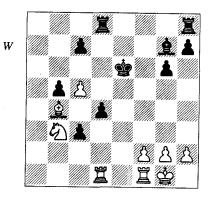


Black has two connected and advanced passed pawns for the piece. No real conclusion has been drawn as to whether this gives Black enough compensation.

19...26!?

The older line runs 19... 全 7 20 全 b4 全 f6 21 a4! bxa4 (21... 全 d7 22 axb5 axb5 23 罩 a6 c6 24 罩 d1 全 e6 25 罩 xc6+ 全 d5 26 罩 xf6 全 c4 27 罩 d6! gave White a winning position in McDonald-Morris, London 1994) 22 c6 d3 23 罩 xa4 d2 24 罩 xa6 全 b8 25 夕 xd2 cxd2 26 罩 d1 罩 he8 27 全 f1 罩 e1+ 28 罩 xe1 dxe1 + 29 全 xe1 and White has some chances to make his extra pawn count, Ninov-Dimov, corr 1995.

20 单b4 单g7 21 a4 单d7 22 axb5 axb5 23 罩ad1 单e6 (D)



This position was reached in the game Shirov-Timman, Wijk aan Zee 1996. Play continued 24 \(\mathbb{I} \) fe1+\(\mathbb{O} \) d5 \(\mathbb{L} \) xc3 \(\mathbb{C} \) c4 and Black was just holding on.

C2)

11 **2** xe6

The safest continuation. After this move White can play for a small positional advantage.

11... 2xe6 12 cxd4 2cxd4 13 a4!?

13 2e4 is also seen quite often, but 13 a4 poses Black some serious questions and has achieved good practical results.

13...**⊈**e7

Black has two other sensible possibilities:

b) 13... \(\Delta c5 14 \) \(\Delta 4 \) \(\Delta b6 \) (14...0-0 15 \(\Delta xc5 \) \(\Delta xf3 + 16 \) \(\Delta xf3 \) \(\Delta xc5 17 \) axb5 axb5 18 \(\Delta g5! \) \(\Delta xa1 19 \) \(\Delta xd8 \) \(\Delta xf1 + 20 \) \(\Delta xf1 \) \(\Delta xd8 21 \) g3 was slightly better for White in Topalov-Anand, Dos Hermanas 1996) 15 \(\Delta f5 \) \(\Delta xg5 \) \(\Delta d7 \) and now instead of 17 axb5, as in the game Am.Rodriguez-Korneev, Barbera del Valles 1994, Rodriguez suggests 17 \(\Delta e1 0-0 18 \) \(\Delta a3!, planning to swing the rook into a kingside attack.

14 ②xd4 ②xd4

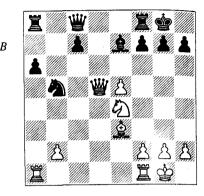
14... 豐xd4 15 axb5 豐xe5 16 bxa6 0-0 17 豐a4 leaves Black struggling to eliminate White's extra pawn, e.g. 17... 包c5 18 豐c4 富fb8 19 罩a5 豐d6 20 包e4 包xe4 21 豐xe4 and White is better, Topalov-Korchnoi, Madrid 1996.

15 De4 0-0

The stem game with 13 a4 continued 15...②e6?! 16 全e3 0-0 17 f4 豐xd1 18 單fxd1 單fb8 19 單d7 and White converted his endgame advantage into

victory in Karpov-Korchnoi, Merano Wch (18) 1981.

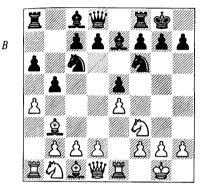
16 axb5 ②xb5 17 **2**e3 **2**c8 18 **2**d5!? (D)



Now Chandler-Yusupov, Hastings 1989/90 continued 18...單d8? 19 豐c6! and Black was rather tied down. Yusupov suggests 18...豐f5 19 ②g3 豐g6 as Black's best chance to equalize.

8 The 8 a4 Anti-Marshall

1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 ②b5 a6 4 ②a4 ②f6 5 0-0 ②e7 6 □e1 b5 7 ②b3 0-0 8 a4 (D)

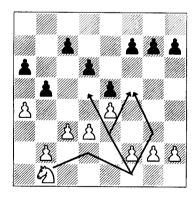


When Vasily Ivanchuk lost a recent game as White in the Marshall Attack against the Dutchman Jan Timman, the Ukrainian grandmaster went as far as saying that 8 c3, allowing the Marshall (8...d5), is a mistake, after which White has to fight for the draw! Of course this is a very over-the-top condemnation of 8 c3, but given that even the world's top players have trouble keeping up with the breakneck speed of Marshall theory, I'm quite pleased to be advocating an anti-Marshall system in this book!

With 8 a4 White brings his al-rook into the game and immediately puts pressure on the b5-pawn. Thus Marshall-style gambits are more or less

avoided (Black can still try his luck, but by comparison to the real Marshall, ...d5 lines against a4 just don't have the same bite). In this chapter White develops in a more restrained fashion with d3 and \(\overline{D}\)bd2-f1. Notice that White need not hurry to play c3, as ...\(\overline{D}\)a5 can be answered by \(\overline{Q}\)a2, retaining the bishop along the a2-g8 diagonal. Because White does not play an early d4 advance, Black is under less immediate pressure in the centre. He can use this extra freedom to develop in a number of ways.

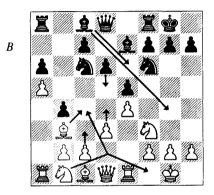
The Lopez Knight Manoeuvre



The arrows show the typical paths available to the b1-knight. The importance of this plan cannot be overemphasized. When the knight reaches either e3 or g3, it not only influences

the struggle for the centre, it is also ready to hop into more advanced squares such as d5 and f5. In conjunction with White's other pieces, this knight can help White set up attacks on the kingside. Once the knight has moved from d2 to f1, the dark-squared bishop is no longer blocked and is ready to join the action.

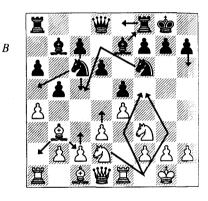
Black Plays ...b4



Here's a typical position that can arise if Black plays an early ...b4. White's last move was 10 a5!, fixing the a6-pawn and also isolating the one on b4. These weaknesses could prove important later on in the game. For example. White often plays \(\frac{1}{2}\)c4 to pressurize the a6-pawn. However, it's not all one-way traffic, as the pawn on a5 is a little weak in itself, and so it needs constant attention. Naturally, White can continue with the usual plan of Øbd2-f1, although the c4-square can also be a useful place for this knight. Later on, of course, White may proceed in the centre with c3 and d4.

For Black's part, he must choose where to place his c8-bishop. The normal squares are e6, where it opposes the Lopez bishop, and g4, pinning the knight. Black also strives to play the freeing ...d5 advance. If White answers this with exd5, then Black achieves the 'Little Centre', but in compensation White has possession of the c4 outpost.

Black Plays皇b7



Here's a typical starting position for the 8... \$\square\$b7 line. White has already begun the Lopez knight manoeuvre and can hope to profit from the fact that Black's bishop is on b7 by using the f5 outpost for this knight. In conjunction with the Lopez bishop, White can often build up a menacing attack on the kingside like this. Once again White will eventually step up the pressure in the centre with c3 and d4.

Black has many different ways to combat White's strategy. The first is to opt for the usual queenside counterplay with ... 2a5 and ...c5. In some

lines Black can attempt to block out the Lopez bishop with a timely ...c4. Together with this idea, Black can bolster his kingside with moves such as ... Le8, ... Le8 and possibly ...h6 (preventing Lg5 or Lg5). A different plan consists of ... Ld7-c5, putting pressure on b3 and a4, while allowing Black to overprotect d4 with ... Lf6.

The Theory of the 8 a4 Anti-Marshall

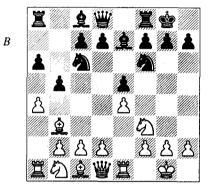
1 e4 e5 2 🗹 f3 🖾 c6 3 🕏 b5 a6 4 💆 a4 🖄 f6 5 0-0 💆 e7 6 🖺 e1 b5

For 6...d6 7 c3 see Chapter 6, Line A.

7 **≜**b3 0-0

For the main-line Closed Lopez starting with 7...d6, see Chapters 9-15. As well as 7...0-0, Black can prepare to play another Marshall-style gambit with 7... \$\dot\dots b7\$, intending to meet 8 c3 with 8...d5!?. After 7... \$\dot b7 8 d3 0-0 White can transpose into the Anti-Marshall with 9 a4, but can also try another approach with 9 2 c3 d6 10 a3!?. White preserves the bishop on the a2g8 diagonal and Black can no longer challenge it with ... 2e6. Meanwhile. the knight may go straight to d5, or move to g3 via e2 (this line can be compared favourably to another anti-Marshall which has become popular recently, that is 7...0-0 8 h3!? **2**b7 9 d3 d6 10 a3, as White hasn't expended a tempo on h3). One possible continuation after 10 a3 runs 10...2d4 11 ②xd4 exd4 12 ②e2 c5 13 ②g3 d5 14 e5 2e8 15 c3 f5 (15...dxc3 16 bxc3 g6 17 d4 ②g7 18 ②h6 favoured White in Leko-Am.Rodriguez, Havana 1997) 16 cxd4 cxd4 17 豐f3 and Black's weak pawns give White a clear plus, Emms-Hebden, British Ch (Plymouth) 1992.

8 a4 (D)



There are three main possibilities:

A: 8...**≝b8** 83 B: 8...b4 84 C: 8...**≜b7** 85

I should say at this point that Black can also be really stubborn by continuing in Marshall style with 8...d5?!, but it's quite clear that against this 8 a4 is far more useful than 8 c3. Most moves give White the advantage here. 9 全xd5 ②xd5 10 exd5 ②d4 11 ②xd4 exd4 12 axb5 全b7 13 c4 dxc3 14 dxc3 axb5 15 置xa8 全xa8 16 營d3 全xd5 17 營xb5, with a clear extra pawn, de Firmian-I.Sokolov, Amsterdam 1996, looks convincing enough.

A) 8...**¤**b8 This is not a very common move. Black still harbours thoughts of playing a Marshall Attack. However, the opening of the a-file means that White gets a far better version than normal.

9 axb5 axb5 10 c3 d5

After 10...d6, White need not prepare the central advance with 11 h3, but can go ahead immediately with 11 d4!. The point is that the standard reply 11... g4 can be met by 12 d5!, winning the knight. Black can exchange on d4 first, but after 11...exd4 12 cxd4 g4 13 c3 d7 14 e3 White's central control gives him an ideal position, Kindermann-Liubarsky, Hamburg 1993.

11 exd5 ②xd5 12 ②xe5 ②xe5 13 Exe5 ②f6!

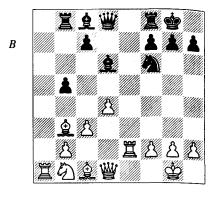
The main 'Marshall' move here would be 13...c6, but after 14 d4 鱼d6 15 罩e1 營h4 16 g3 營h3 17 鱼e3 鱼g4 18 營d3, the opening of the a-file gives White an important advantage over the normal Marshall lines. In particular, Black has to watch out for a timely 罩a6, attacking the vulnerable c6-pawn.

14 d4 \(\frac{1}{2}\).d6 15 \(\frac{1}{2}\)e2! (D)

15 **L**e1? gives Black unnecessary chances after 15... ②g4!, e.g. 16 h3 **w**h4 17 **w**f3 ②xf2!.

After 15 **\(\mathbb{Z}\)**e2 Black has the following possibilities:

- a) 15...b4?! 16 ②d2 **Z**b5 17 ②f1 and White is clearly better.
- b) 15...c5!? (Wolff-Fang, New York 1994) and now the simplest solution for White looks to be 16 dxc5!? 鱼xc5 17 豐xd8 罩xd8 18 鱼f4 鱼g4 19 罩e1 罩bc8 20 包d2 b4 21 h3 bxc3 22 bxc3, when White has good chances to



convert the extra pawn into a full point.

c) 15... 分h5 16 鱼e3 鱼b7 (16... 鱼g4 17 f3 豐h4 18 g3 公xg3 19 單g2! 鱼h3 20 鱼f2! 鱼xg2 21 每xg2 wins for White) 17 公d2 豐h4 18 分f1 and, with h2 safely protected, Black doesn't have enough play for the pawn.

B)

8...b4

9 d3

9 d4 is also possible, but the text-move is the most popular.

9...d6 10 a5!

Preventing ... 2a5 and fixing the a6-pawn, which could become a weakness later on.

10...**⊈**e6

A more ambitious alternative for Black is 10... 2g4, preparing ... 2d4 and ...d5. Now White has:

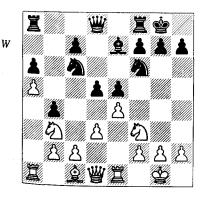
a) 11 ②bd2!? ②d4 12 ②c4 c6 13 h3 ②xf3+14 ②xf3 ②h5 was played in Hraček-I.Sokolov, Pärnu 1996 and now, according to Hraček, White can keep a small advantage with 15 \(\Delta\)b3!? \(\Delta\)d7 16 \(\Delta\)e3 \(\Delta\)h8 17 g4 \(\Delta\)g6 18 \(\Delta\)d2.

b) 11 2e3 d5 12 2bd2 h6 (threatening ...d4) 13 h3 and now 13...2h5 14 exd5 2xd5 15 2e2 (or 15 b1!?) is enough to give White a slight edge, while 13...d4!? 14 hxg4 dxe3 15 fxe3 2xg4 16 2h2 2xh2 17 2xh2 2g5 18 d5 d7 19 h5 2ae8 20 2f3 gave White good attacking chances in T.Ravi-Chatterjee, Indian Ch (Kasaragod) 1996. The bishop on d5 is a particularly strong piece.

11 **②bd2 ≜**xb3

After 11... \$\begin{align*} \text{Loc4} & \text{Wc8} & 13 & 14 \text{Loc3} & 15 & 2xd4 \\
\text{2xd4} & 16 & 2xd5 & 2xd5 & 17 \text{ exd5} & 2xd7 & 18 \\
\text{Loc4} & 2xd5 & 2xd5 & 17 \text{ exd5} & 2xd7 & 18 \\
\text{Loc4} & 2xd5 & 2xd5 & 2xd7 & 18 \\
\text{Loc4} & 2xd5 & 2xd5 & 2xd7 & 18 \\
\text{Loc4} & 2xd2 & 2xd5 & 2xd7 & 18 \\
\text{Loc4} & 2xd2 & 2xd5 & 2xd7 & 18 \\
\text{Loc4} & 2xd2 & 2xd5 & 2xd7 & 2xd7 & 2xd7 \\
\text{Loc4} & 1y & 2xd2 & 2xd7 & 2xd7

12 ②xb3 d5!? (D)



This position occurred in Speelman-Smyslov, Biel IZ 1993. After 13 We2 Ze8 14 2g5 h6 15 2h4 2h5 16 2g3 2xg3 17 hxg3 2f8 18 2fd2 Wd6 Black had equalized. White has other tries, including 13 2g5, but in any case, this seems to be a relatively underrated line for Black.

C)

8...**≜**b7

The most natural and also the most popular choice.

9 d3

This move is all part of the restrained approach. If 9 c3 Black shouldn't hesitate to play in Marshall fashion with 9...d5!.

After 9 d3 we now have another major crossroads. Black can play:

C1: 9...**Ee8** 86 C2: 9...**d6** 86

Other moves pose fewer problems:

- a) 9...2d4?! 10 2xd4 exd4 11 c3 dxc3 12 2xc3 b4 13 2e2 and White will follow up with 2g3.
- b) 9...d5?! is far too optimistic. White simply grabs the pawn with 10 exd5, e.g. 10...公d4 11 c4 公xb3 12 豐xb3 單b8 13 axb5 axb5 14 豐d1 and White is clearly better, Tal-Kuzmin, USSR Ch 1972.
- c) 9... 2a5 has the idea 10 2xe5? 2xb3 11 cxb3 d5!, when the centre opens up for the black bishops. However, there is no need to be so accommodating. The natural 10 2a2! is far stronger. Following 10...d6 White can play 11 2d2! c5 (after 11... 2c6 I like 12 2a3, when 12...bxa4 13 c3 and

12...b4 13 ②c4 look promising) 12 ②xa5 豐xa5 13 axb5 豐xb5 (13...豐b6 14 bxa6 黨xa6 15 ②a3! 豐xb2 16 ②c4 鼍aa8 17 黨b1 and the rook invades on the seventh rank, Matulović-Velimirović, Belgrade 1977) 14 ②bd2 豐xb2 15 ②xf7+ 黨xf7 16 黨b1 豐a2 17 黨xb7 and Black has big problems defending all of his light-squared weaknesses.

C1)

9...**¤e8**

Delaying the advance of the dpawn, in the hope that it can later be moved to d5 in one go.

10 **包bd2!?**

I should also mention that 10 包c3 promises White a small edge, e.g. 10...b4 11 包d5 包a5 12 包xe7+ 豐xe7 13 皇a2 d5 14 皇g5 dxe4 15 dxe4 單ad8 16 豐e2 h6 17 皇h4 and the two bishops are worth a slight pull, Hübner-Zso.Polgar, Biel 1987.

10...£f8 11 c3 h6

Black has other options:

- a) 11...d6 transposes to Line C2.
- b) 11...d5 is the most consistent follow-up to Black's play, but after 12 axb5 axb5 13 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xa8 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xa8 14 exd5 neither 14...\(\mathbb{Z}\)xd5 15 d4! nor 14...\(\mathbb{Z}\)a5 15 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xe5 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xe5 looks satisfactory for Black.

12 **Q**a2!

A very subtle move. The main point is that it eliminates ideas of a tempogaining ... 2 a5.

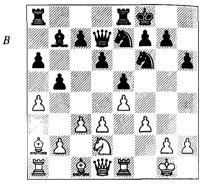
12...d6

Finally settling for just the one square forward. Lunging with 12...d5 only runs into trouble after 13 exd5 \Delta xd5 14 d4!.

13 包h4! 豐d7

Black can also prepare ...d5 with 13... ②e7!?, but after 14 ②f1! d5 15 響f3! ②h7 16 ②g3 豐d7 17 ②gf5 White's kingside attack is starting to become quite menacing.

14 ②g6 ②e7 15 ②xf8 \$\dispxf8 16 f3!



This position was reached in Kasparov-Short, London PCA Wch (3) 1993. White has a small but persistent advantage. At the moment Black's position looks quite secure, but White possesses the latent power of the bishop-pair, which will become more important as the position opens up.

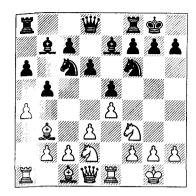
C2)

9...d6

The most popular move.

10 **(D)**

10 ②c3 is the old main line, but Kasparov was successful with 10 ②bd2 in his World Championship match against Short, and since then other top players have followed his lead. White delays the c3 advance so that he can



complete the knight manoeuvre more quickly.

Once again Black has a choice of moves:

C21: 10... 2d7 87 C22: 10... 2a5 88

Other, less important, tries for Black are:

a) 10...\(\Delta\beta\beta!\)? was played once by Hebden, who is an expert on the black side of the Anti-Marshall. After 11 \(\Delta\beta\beta\) c5, as played in Nunn-Hebden, Hastings 1993/4, I like the move 12 \(\Delta\delta\beta!\), e.g. 12...\(\Delta\cdot\cdot\) c6 13 \(\Delta\delta\cdot\) c4 14 \(\Delta\alpha\alpha\) and Black will have problems maintaining the blocking pawn at c4, while the knight is ready to hop into f5.

b) 10...單e8 11 c3 h6 (for 11...包a5 12 鱼a2 c5 see Line C22) 12 包f1 鱼f8 13 包e3 包e7!? 14 包h4 豐d7 and now, instead of 15 h3, as in Waters-Hebden, British League (4NCL) 1997/8, I prefer 15 包ef5!, planning 豐f3, with a powerful attack.

C21)

10... ②d7 11 c3 ②c5 12 axb5 axb5

12...②xb3? 13 bxc6! ②xa1 14 cxb7 ■b8 15 ₩a4 wins material for White.

13 **X**xa8 **£**xa8

After 13... wxa8 14 \(\Delta \cdot c2, 14... \Delta f6 \)
15 b4 \(\Delta \cdot 6 \) 16 \(\Delta f1 \) g6 17 \(\Delta \cdot 2 \Delta 7 \)
\(\Delta b3 \) wd8 transposes to the main line, while Kasparov gives 14...b4 15 d4 bxc3 16 bxc3 \(\Delta d7 \) 17 \(\Delta f1 \) as better for White.

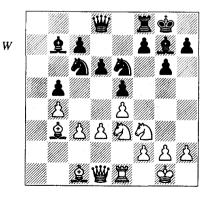
14 \(\mathbb{Q} \) c2 \(\mathbb{Q} \) f6

Continuing to strong-point the e5-square and preventing White's d4 advance. Opening the position with 14...d5? is an instructive mistake. After 15 exd5 豐xd5 16 d4! exd4 17 cxd4 ②d7 18 ②e4 豐d6 19 豐c2 White wins material following either 19...②b4 20 ②xh7+ ②h8 21 豐f5 or 19...h6 20 ②xc6! ②xc6 21 罩xe7.

15 b4 Øe6 16 Øf1 ♠b7

Black plans to bring the bishop back into play via c8. Both 16... 包e7 17 包e3 包g6 18 包g4 and 16...d5!? 17 exd5 豐xd5 18 包e3 豐d8 19 包g4 fail to alter the general assessment of the position.

17 🖒 e3 g6 18 😩 b3 🖳 g7 (D)



This position was reached in Kasparov-Short, London PCA Wch (7) 1993. Kasparov kept an edge with 19 h4!?, planning to soften up the black kingside with h5. In his notes to the game, however, Kasparov felt that 19 \(\infty\)c2!, planning d4, was even stronger.

C22)

10... ∮a5 11 ≜a2 c5 12 ∮f1

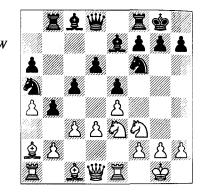
12 c3 is also important due to transpositions. Following 12...單e8 13 包f1 we have:

- a) 13...c4!? 14 \(\text{\$\exitit{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\texit{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\
 - b) 13...h6 14 De3 and now:
- b1) 14....全f8 15 b4 cxb4 16 cxb4 公c6 17 公d5 公xd5 18 全xd5 營d7 19 營b3 bxa4 20 營xa4 單ed8 21 全d2 公e7 22 營xd7 罩xd7 and now 23 全xb7 罩xb7 was equal in Kindermann-Adams, Garmisch 1994, but 23 全c4! keeps pressure on the black position.
- b2) 14... 曾d7 15 b4 cxb4 16 cxb4 ②c6 17 ②d2 ②f8 18 ②d5 (18 axb5!? axb5 19 ②d5 ②xd5 ②xd5 ③xa1 21 曾xa1 ③a8 22 曾c3 may give White an edge) 18... ②xd5 19 ②xd5 ②e7 20 ②xb7 曾xb7 21 d4 bxa4 22 曾xa4 exd4 23 ②xd4 ②g6 with equality, Onishchuk-Adams, Bundesliga 1996/7.

12...b4 13 **②**e3 **≜**c8

This line can be compared quite favourably with 10 2c3 2a5 11 2a2 b4 12 2e2 2b8 13 2g3 c5 14 2f5 2c8 15 2e3 2e6, as played in Anand-Short, Amsterdam 1992. Here White is two tempi ahead, having taken only three moves to plant the knight on e3. In a semi-closed position the loss of time is not a disaster for Black, but it's still enough to give White a persistent edge.

14 c3 **\(\begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{c} \begin{array}{**

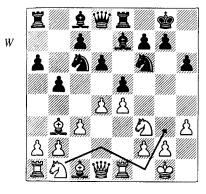


Now 15 cxb4 異xb4 16 全d2 異b8 17 全c3 ②c6 18 ②d2 全e6 was equal in Ivkov-Xie Jun, Vienna 1993, so maybe White should try 15 ②c4!?, e.g. 15...②xc4 (15...全e6?! 16 ②xa5! 豐xa5 17 全xe6 fxe6 18 cxb4 豐xb4 19 ②g5 and the e6-pawn drops) 16 全xc4 a5 17 d4 bxc3 18 bxc3 cxd4 19 cxd4 全b7 20 d5 and White keeps a small advantage.

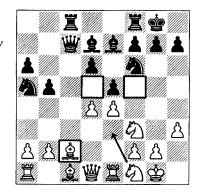
9 Ideas in the Closed Lopez

Before moving on to the individual variations of the Closed Lopez, we should take a brief look at some of the more important positional ideas for both White and Black. Although the variations can lead to a diversity of different types of positions, there are still many familiar motifs running through all the lines.

The Lopez Knight Manoeuvre



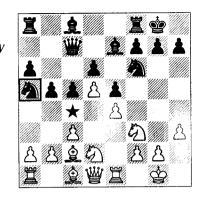
The above position is from the Smyslov Variation (9...h6). Without a doubt White's most popular continuation here is to play 11 \(\Delta\)bd2!, followed by 12 \(\Delta\)f1 and 13 \(\Delta\)g3. We have seen this before, and we'll see it again! On g3 the knight gives valuable support to the e4-pawn and is ready to assist in a later kingside assault by moving to f5.



This position can arise from the Chigorin Defence. Here White plays 15 2e3!, protecting the c2-bishop and eyeing the important f5 and d5 posts.

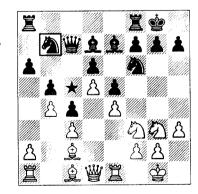
Black's Offside Knight

The problem of the offside knight arises chiefly in the Chigorin Defence (9... Da5). Black originally plays the move to gain a tempo on the Lopez bishop and to enable him to make the advance ...c5. However, Black often has to spend several tempi reintroducing the knight into the action. Worse still, the knight may become a real liability, achieving nothing in itself and also getting in the way of Black's other pieces. White can sometimes invest lots of time just to make sure the knight remains inactive. Here's an instructive example of White adopting this policy.



Geller - Mecking Palma de Mallorca IZ 1970

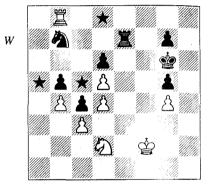
Here Geller started the restraint procedure with 14 b3!, not allowing the a5-knight to jump into c4 once the d2-knight has moved to f1. After 14... 2d7 15 2f1 Mecking tried to activate his knight another way with 15... **②b7** 16 **②g3** c4, only to be foiled again by the excellent move 17 b4! (D).



Now the knight remains a miserable piece on b7. Its only route to any

activity would be via d8 to f7, but to do this Black would have to move his f6-knight and his f7-pawn, so this manoeuvre needs lots of preparation and is rather cumbersome.

The knight can remain a liability right into the endgame. Here's a particularly shocking example.



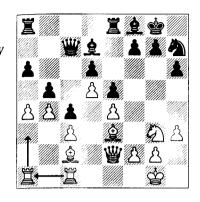
Emms - Mirallès Andorra Z 1998

Not only does the black knight have no future, it also has to be protected by Black's only other piece. After 44 Db1!, intending Da3 and Dxb5, my opponent found no reason to continue the struggle.

White Uses the a-file

After an initial a4 advance, White can sometimes benefit by a direct assault down the a-file. This can be particularly effective if the position remains blocked elsewhere.

The position on the following page arose from the Smyslov Variation. Here the computer shows it has positional



Deep Blue - Kasparov New York (2) 1997

subtlety to go with its awesome calculating ability.

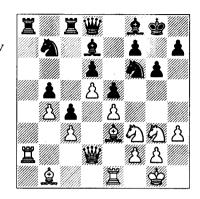
24 Ha3! Hec8 25 Hca1!

Black will always have to be concerned about White opening the a-file and penetrating with his rooks. Even Kasparov could not come up with a suitable defensive plan.

25...₩d8 26 f4 ②f6 27 fxe5 dxe5 28 響f1 ②e8 29 響f2 ②d6 30 &b6 **≝e8 31 ≌3a2 ≗e7 32 ≗c5 ≗f8 33** ②f5 &xf5 34 exf5 f6 35 &xd6 &xd6 36 axb5 axb5 37 **a**e4 **a**xa2 38 **a**xa2 **營d7 39 營a7 罩c7 40 營b6**

The computer has comfortably arrived at an overwhelming position.

The following position arose from the Chigorin Defence. Black would like to relieve the pressure by multiple exchanges down the a-file. Karpov came up with an inspired way to prevent this. After the clever blocking move 24 \(\partial a7!\) Black remains forever cramped and White can build up on

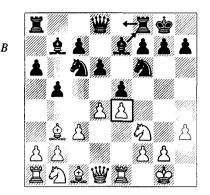


Karpov - Unzicker Nice OL 1974

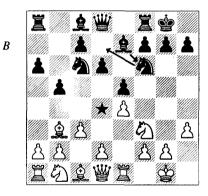
the a-file at leisure. The rest of the game is quite instructive, with Karpov combining potential threats down the a-file with opening another attacking front on the kingside. After 24... De8 25 &c2 夕c7 26 里ea1 豐e7 27 &b1 f6 31 f5 g5 32 &c2 &f7 33 @g3 @b7 34 & d1 h6 35 & h5 We8 36 Wd1 6 d8 37 里a3 曾f8 38 里1a2 曾g8 39 包g4 \$\displaystyle f8 40 &\displaystyle g8 41 &\displaystyle xf7+ &\displaystyle xf7 42 ₩h5 ②d8 43 ₩g6 \$f8 44 ②h5 Unzicker threw in the towel. Black's position at the end is a rather sorry sight!

Black Reinforces the e5-pawn

The theoretical position at the top of the following page arises in the Zaitsev Variation, Black's most popular continuation here is 10... Ze8! 11 **Øbd2 ≜f8**. Now the e5-pawn has added protection and the black rook also bears down on White's e4-pawn. The f8-bishop may be reintroduced



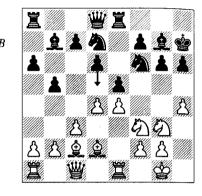
via a fianchetto with ...g6, which would help to bolster Black's king position. Black also often plays ...h6, to prevent any annoying 2g5 and 2g5 ideas from White



In the Karpov Variation Black reinforces e5 in a different way. After 9... 2d7 10 d4 2f6 it's the dark-squared bishop that does the work, defending e5 and also putting pressure on the d4-pawn, thus attempting to resolve the tension in the centre. White may relieve the pressure by playing d5.

Black Breaks with ...d5

Not a common occurrence, but if White neglects to keep sufficient control over the central squares then Black can sometimes react aggressively.

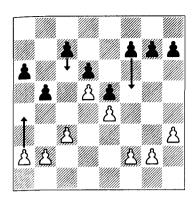


Smirin – Beliavsky USSR Ch (Odessa) 1989

Here White has gone for a crude kingside attack. Beliavsky retaliated in classical style with 18...d5! 19 exd5 exd4 20 ②xd4 (20 h5! is more consistent) 20...①e5! 21 ②e6 豐xd5 22 ②f4 豐c6 and Black went on to win in fine style.

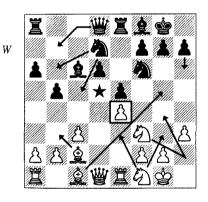
White Plays an Early d5

This idea (see diagram on following page) is frequently seen in our study of the Zaitsev and Karpov systems. White deliberately blocks the centre, leading to a phase of slow manoeuvring. Just concentrating on the pawn breaks, White may try a4, increasing the pressure on Black's queenside pawns. Black's two possible pawn breaks are ...c6 and ...f5. The former is



by far the most popular option, as it's usually far easier to carry out.

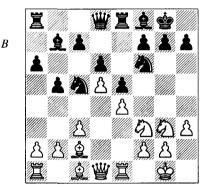
Black Breaks with ...c6



Here's a typical position, which could arise after Black answers White's early d5 with ...c6 and White exchanges on c6. The following play is based very much around the central squares, and in particular, the e4- and d5-squares. White will attempt to dominate the d5-square with moves such as \$\Delta\$53, \$\Delta\$55, \$\Delta\$63 and even \$\Delta\$3h2-g4. Black meanwhile will also

try to control d5, and at the same time keep White busy defending the e4-pawn. This can be achieved by moves such as ... 2c5/b6, ... c8/c7-b7 and ... b6 (preventing b6). If Black gains enough control over d5, he may contemplate opening the position with ... d5. On one hand this liberates the bishop on f8, but on the other hand it also frees White's c2-bishop.

Often after White plays d5, the timing of Black's response ... c6 is crucial.

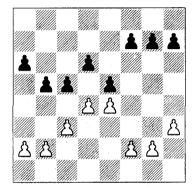


Short – Timman *El Escorial Ct (10) 1993*

Here Black is in a prime position to play 15...c6 and in fact this is the theoretical move. Instead Timman delayed with 15...a5 16 h2 g6 17 wf3 h5 18 e3 fd7 19 ad1 we7 20 fgf1 eg7 21 ec1. Here Black should probably continue with 21...a4. After Timman's 21...c6?, however, Short showed he was ready for the break. The game continued 22 b4! axb4 23 cxb4 aa4 24 dxc6 exc6 25 eb3! ad8 26 wg3 ff8 27 ff e6 28 ff e6 28 ff exc5 29

全xg5 全f6 30 全xf6 營xf6 31 트d3 and White had won the battle of the central squares. Following 31...h4? 32 트f3! hxg3 33 트xf6 gxf2+ 34 尝xf2 트e7 35 트xg6+ Short won a pawn and very soon the game.

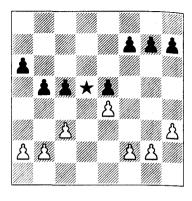
Black Plays ...c5



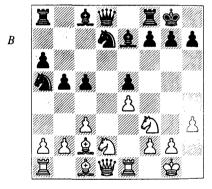
This important advance is mainly seen in the Chigorin and Breyer Variations. Black simultaneously exerts more pressure on the d4-pawn and harmonizes his own pawn-chain, making more space for his pieces to move from the kingside to the queenside and vice-versa. Apart from keeping the tension, there are two possible ways that White can react to this advance. He can exchange with dxe5 or dxc5 or he can push with d5.

White Exchanges on c5 or e5

This particular strategy was a favourite of Bobby Fischer's. After the exchange of pawns Black has just as much space as White, but White can hope to profit by making use of the



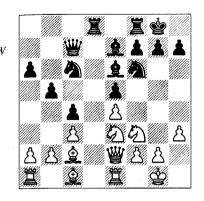
d5-outpost. This plan can prove very powerful if Black does not respond precisely.



Fischer – Keres Curação Ct 1962

In this position 13...f6 is probably Black's best move. Instead Keres played the plausible 13... 27? and following 14 2f1 2b6 15 2e3! \$\mathbb{L}\$d8 16 \$\mathbb{L}\$e2 \$\mathbb{L}\$e6 17 2d5! \$\mathbb{L}\$xd5 18 exd5 \$\mathbb{L}\$xd5 19 \$\mathbb{L}\$xe5 the potential in White's position was released. Following 19... \$\mathbb{L}\$a7 20 \$\mathbb{L}\$f4 \$\mathbb{L}\$b6 21 \$\mathbb{L}\$ad1 Fischer had

built up an irresistible attack, against which the Estonian grandmaster was unable to defend.

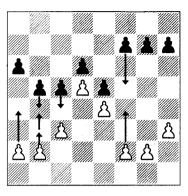


Fischer – Kholmov Havana 1965

Here Fischer's opponent is better prepared to defend the d5-square. After 17 ②g5 h6! 18 ②xe6 fxe6 Black's doubled e-pawns protect some vital squares and give Black a fully equal position.

White Pushes with d5

By waiting for Black to play ...c5 and only then advancing with d5, White avoids the possibility of an attack at the head of the pawn-chain with ...c6. Play now revolves around various subtle piece manoeuvres and pawn moves. For example, Black will often attempt to play ...c4, in order to obtain a post for a knight on c5, which from there could even hop into the d3-square.



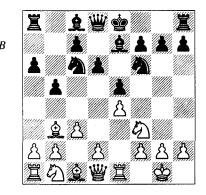
White may try to deny Black this idea with an earlier b3, planning to answer ...c4 with b4. As we saw earlier, this can be a particularly effective plan if Black has a knight on b7.

As we have seen before, White may also attack on the queenside with a4. If Black answers this with ...b4, then White can either exchange on b4 and try to take control of the c-file, or else block the queenside completely with c4 and turn his attention to the other wing.

As far as play on the kingside goes, Black can attack the base of the pawn-chain with ...f5, although usually this requires a great deal of preparation. Likewise, White may himself attack with f4. If Black exchanges with ...exf4, then he obtains the e5-square as an outpost, but the backward d6-pawn could be subject to attack. If Black has pushed with ...c4, then White would also have use of the d4 outpost.

10 Rare Closed Lopez Variations

1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 ②b5 a6 4 ②a4 ②f6 5 0-0 ②e7 6 □e1 b5 7 ②b3 d6 8 c3 (D)



8...0-0

Black can aim immediately for a Chigorin set-up after 8... ②a5 9 全c2 c5, but the drawback of this move-order is that Black has less pressure on d4, so White can do without the usual h3. After 10 d4! 豐c7 11 a4! b4 (if 11... 單b8, 12 axb5 axb5 13 dxe5 dxe5 14 ②xe5! wins a pawn, while 11...0-0 12 axb5 axb5 13 b4 wins even more) 12 cxb4 cxb4 13 ②bd2 0-0 14 b3 全g4 15 全b2 ②c6 16 h3 全xf3 17 ②xf3, White has a very pleasant position.

9 h3

This modest move is an important link in White's plans, and has been

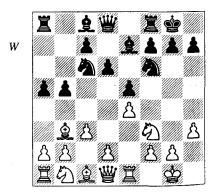
considered the main line for a very long time. White rules out the pinning move that would be effective after 9 d4, viz. 9... 2g4! (although this remains a playable line for White).

In this chapter we will deal with two of Black's less popular replies to 9 h3:

A: 9...a5 96 **B:** 9...**a**e6 97

Note that 9... \(\begin{align*} \text{ \text{de}} & \text{ is also possible, as after 10 d4 \(\beta \text{ b7} \) we have reached the Zaitsev Variation (see Chapter 12).

A) 9...a5 (D)



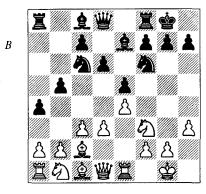
This unusual move was briefly popular in the late 1980s. Black is ready to

exchange the Lopez bishop if White carries on as normal with 10 d4, but White can keep the advantage by playing in a more restrained manner.

10 d3

10 d4 allows Black to carry out his idea. After 10...exd4! 11 cxd4 a4 12 全c2 公b4 13 公c3 公xc2 14 豐xc2 c6 the position is roughly level, Kronig-Gostiša, Finkenstein 1994.

10...a4 11 **\Delta**c2 (D)



11...**≜.d**7

Black has to be careful with his far-flung a-pawn. After the casual 11... 2e8 Black is punished by 12 c4!, when suddenly Black is in trouble, e.g. 12... bxc4 13 2xa4 2b7 14 dxc4 or 12... 2b4 13 cxb5 2xc2 14 2xc2 2d7 15 2c3. In either case White is a pawn to the good.

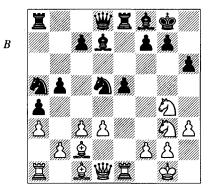
12 **②bd2 ℤe8**

12... 對 b 8?! is too slow. After 13 d 4 對 b 7 14 ② f 1 exd 4 15 cxd 4 ② b 4 16 ② b 1 置 ad 8 17 ② g 3 置 f e 8 18 ② d 2 ② a 6 19 e 5 White had a very potent attack in Ehlvest-P.Nikolić, Reykjavik 1988.

13 **2**f1 h6

White also keeps an advantage after 13... \(\hat{\text{\ti}\text{\texi{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\texit{\text{\texi{\texi{\texi{\texi}\texi{\texi{\texi}\texi{\texi{\texi{\texi{\texi}\texi{\texi{\texi{\texi{\texi{\texi{\texi{\texi{\texi{\te}

14 a3 🖾 a5 15 🖄 g3 ೩ f8 16 🖄 h2 d5 17 exd5 🖄 xd5 18 🖄 g4 (D)



Smagin-Hebden, Hastings Masters 1990 continued 18...全xg4 19 營xg4 里a6 20 全d2 分f6 21 營f3 里ae6 22 里ad1 with a small plus for White.

B)

9...**≜**.e6

Black offers the exchange of the light-squared bishops, hoping that this will reduce White's attacking capabilities.

10 d4 &xb3 11 axb3 exd4

This is the modern way to play the position. Older tries grant White too much space, e.g.:

- a) 11...單e8 12 d5 ②b8 13 c4 c6 14 豐d3 b4 15 盒d2!? c5 16 盒e3 ②bd7 17 ②bd2 was better for White in Psakhis-Smagin, Protvino 1988.
- b) 11... at d5 2d8 13 c4 c6 14 2c3 cxd5 15 2xd5 2xd5 16 at d5 2xd5 2xd5 16 at d5 2xd5 17 at d2 and Black has various

weaknesses, Aronin-Kholmov, USSR Ch 1957.

12 cxd4 d5 13 e5 2 e4

After 13... ②d7 the spearhead e5-pawn gives White an excellent attacking platform. Smirin-Stempin, Polanica Zdroj 1989 went 14 ②c3 ②b4 15 ②e2 置e8 16 ②g3 c5 17 ②f5 全f8 18 ②g5 h6 19 ②xf7! 當xf7 20 營h5+ 全g8 21 營g6 with a decisive attack.

14 Dc3 f5

15 exf6 **♠**xf6

This pawn sacrifice is Black's sharpest try. 15... ♠xf6 16 ♠g5 gives White a safe advantage, with Black having many weak squares on the c- and e-files.

16 ②xe4 dxe4 17 ℤxe4 d5 18 ℤg4 h5

Other moves include:

- a) 18... ②b4 19 鱼g5 罩ad8 20 徵d2 c5 21 營c3 and White is just a clear pawn up, J.Howell-Bjornsson, Reykjavik 1990.
- b) 18... ①e7 19 ②h6! ②f5 20 ②g5 h5 (20... ②xg5 21 罩xg5 h6 22 罩g4 is better for White) 21 罩f4 ②xg5 22 ②xg5 ②xd4 23 罩xf8+罩xf8 24 營xh5 營f5 25 營h4! ②e2+ and now 26 ⑤h2? allows Black a neat trick leading to a draw, i.e. 26... 營e5+27 ⑤h1 罩xf2!! 28 罩d1! 罩f1+!! 29 罩xf1 ②g3+30 ⑤g1 營e3+31 罩f2 營e1+32 ⑤h2 ②f1+!.

but 26 \$\prescript{\phi}\nu1! leaves Black just a pawn down.

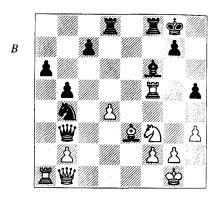
19 \(\mathbb{I}\)f4 \(\mathbb{I}\)ad8

19...g5? 20 ②xg5! ②xg5 (20...營xg5 is met by 21 黨g4!) 21 營xh5 leaves Black with no good defence.

20 皇e3 **包b4**

Or 20...g5 21 Exf6! Exf6 22 £xg5, winning back the exchange with another pawn to boot.

21 **對b1 對xb3 22 單f5** (D)

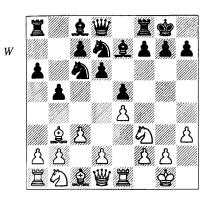


Black's weak kingside offers White very good chances, e.g.:

- a) 22...g6 23 **\mathbb{\mathbb{Z}}**g5!.
- b) 22... Wc2 23 Wxc2 21xc2 24 Zxa6 Zfe8 25 2g5 2xg5 26 Zxg5 2xd4 27 2xd4 Zxd4 28 Zc6! and White went on to win this endgame in Anand-Adams, Linares PCA Ct (3) 1994.
- c) 22...公c2!? (probably best) 23 置xa6 ②xe3 24 fxe3 營xe3+ 25 含h1 and White's active rooks give him the advantage.

11 The Karpov Variation

1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 ②b5 a6 4 ②a4 ②f6 5 0-0 ③e7 6 ဩe1 b5 7 ②b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 ②d7 (D)



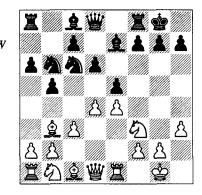
This move has been known for a long time and was recently brought back into the limelight when it was employed four times by Anatoly Karpov in his 1990 World Championship match with Kasparov. One of Black's main ideas is to support the e5-pawn with ... £ f6, which at the same time puts pressure on White's d4-pawn. Meanwhile the d7-knight may move to b6, where it discourages White from playing a4 and may help Black to start operations on the queenside.

10 d4

Now we will look at two continuations for Black:

A: 10...**⊘b6** 99 **B:** 10...**₫f6** 101

A) 10...**约b**6 (D)



Championed by Borislav Ivkov, this move can also be found in the games of Boris Spassky, and, more recently, Michael Adams. By immediately transferring his king's knight to the queenside, Black dissuades White from playing the a4 break. Moreover, Black is now ready to start operations himself on this wing. On the other hand, with both knights on the queenside, Black's king has less defensive cover, and therefore White should concentrate his forces on the relatively undefended kingside.

11 **Dbd2**

At this point Black has two major options:

A1: 11...exd4 100 A2: 11...2.f6 101

В

A1)

11...exd4

With this move Black gives up his foothold in the centre in exchange for immediate queenside counterplay. Play can now become extremely sharp.

12 cxd4 **2**b4

12...d5 is not so effective. After 13 全c2 全e6 14 e5 營d7 15 公b3 全f5 16 全g5 White offers an exchange of bishops that would highlight Black's problems on the dark squares, Fischer-Reshevsky, Santa Monica 1966.

13 Øf1 c5 14 a3 Ø c6 15 ♣e3 Ø a5

A more recent (and perhaps more critical) try is 15...c4!? 16 全c2 d5, obtaining a serious clamp on the queenside. This puts some pressure on White, who cannot afford to delay actions on the kingside. Topalov-Peng Xiaomin, Elista OL 1998 continued 17 夕e5 豐c7 18 夕g3 g6 19 豐f3 全e6 20 夕xc6 豐xc6 21 全h6 罩fe8 22 e5 and we are in the middle of a typical asymmetrical battle.

16 &c2 Dbc4 17 &c1

At the moment it looks as if the black knights are having more fun than the white bishops, but in reality the knights are struggling to find suitable outposts and White is ready to kick one out with a timely b3.

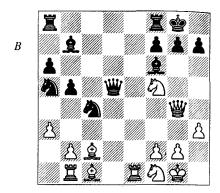
17...cxd4 18 ②xd4 2f6 19 \(\mathbb{I} b1 \)

Elegant prophylaxis. After the immediate 19 b3, 19... 數6! puts White in a rather awkward situation.

After the text-move, White is ready to meet 19... 數6 with 20 包f3, e.g. 20... 全b7 21 b3 包e5 22 全e3 數c7 23 包d4! 單ac8 24 包g3 單fe8 25 罩c1 and the white pieces are more alive.

19...d5 20 exd5 **â** b7 21 **②**f5 **豐**xd5 22 **豐**g4 (D)

22 wxd5 is also not bad, but it seems sensible to keep the queens on the board when there are so many attacking possibilities.



Looking at the diagram, we can see that both sides can boast about dynamic piece-play, but the key here is the position of the knights. Since White will be attacking the black king with queen, rook and all four of his minor pieces, Black will sorely miss the defensive powers of his own knights, the ones grazing on the queenside. Adams-Ivkov, French Cht 1991 proves the point quite effectively. After 22...h5 23 **曾**g3 **里**fe8 24 **皇**g5 **皇**e5 25 f4 Qd4+ 26 \$h2 公c6 (the offside knight hurries back to the action, but it's too late for Black's beleaguered defences) 27 \(\mathbb{\pi}\)bd1 g6 28 \(\mathbb{\pi}\)f6! White's kingside attack quickly became quite overwhelming.

Black has to look for alternatives here and a good start would be with 15...c4!?.

A2)

11...**⊈**f6

A much more solid continuation than 11...exd4. Now that Black has prevented a4, he sets about bolstering the kingside and putting pressure on the d4-pawn.

12 2f1 Ze8 13 21h2!

I like this move. From h2 the knight is ready to hop to g4, when Black will be forced to concede one of his bishops. As 13...g6 14 2g4 2g7 15 2g5 is hardly appealing, Black is forced into immediate central action.

13...exd4 14 cxd4 ②a5 15 **\$**c2 c5 16 b3

16 ②g4 is also good, e.g. 16... ②xg4 17 hxg4 cxd4 18 g5 ③e5 19 ②xd4 g6 20 f4 ⑤g7 (Smirin-Balashov, USSR Ch (Odessa) 1989) and now I approve of the simple 21 b3, intending ⑥b2.

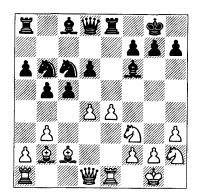
16...**ᡚc6**

16...cxd4 17 ②xd4 d5 can be answered effectively by 18 e5! ②xe5 19 ②xh7+ ③xh7 20 圖h5+ ⑤g8 21 ☒xe5, when White has virtually a free hand on the kingside. Notice how redundant the black knights are looking – it sure is a long way back to the other wing.

17 **≜**b2 (D)

White is all set up for some weighty central thrusting. All lines give White at least a small advantage, e.g.:

- a) 17...cxd4 18 ②xd4 ②xd4 19 ②xd4 ②b7 20 ②g4 ②xd4 21 豐xd4 and the isolated d6-pawn will soon come under heavy fire.
- b) 17...g6 18 e5 dxe5 19 dxc5 2d7 20 2e4 2b7 21 b4 and, amongst other things, the protected passed pawn on c5 causes Black major problems.



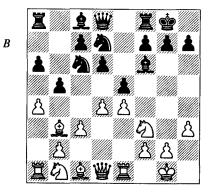
c) 17...\begin{array}{c} a7!? 18 e5! dxe5 19 dxc5 \(\text{D}\)d5 20 \(\text{D}\)g4 \(\text{Q}\)xg4 21 hxg4 g6 22 \(\text{D}\)d2 \(\text{D}\)db4 23 \(\text{D}\)e4 \(\text{D}\)xc2 24 \(\text{W}\)xc2 and White's pieces are more harmoniously placed, Popović-Salov, Manila IZ 1990.

B)

10...**⊈**f6

The main move. Black immediately bolsters the e5-pawn and at the same time exerts pressure on d4. Indeed, normal development with 11 \(\frac{1}{2} \) bd2? would now simply lose a pawn.

11 a4! (D)



The Karpov Variation

Immediately putting the question to Black about what to do with the b-pawn. There are three possible answers:

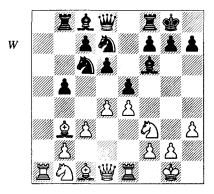
B1: 11...**⊆b8** 102 **B2:** 11...**⊆**a5 102 **B3:** 11...**⊆**b7 103

B1)

11...**≌**b8

Protecting the b5-pawn, but giving up the a-file. This move is not seen very often, but it's not bad, just a little passive.

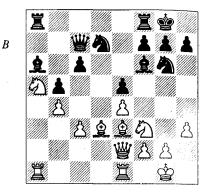
12 axb5 axb5 (D)



13 **≜e**3

13 d5 is also possible, e.g. 13... \triangle e7 14 \triangle bd2 \triangle g6 (14...c6?! is too early, as after 15 dxc6 \triangle xc6 16 \triangle f1 \triangle c5 17 \triangle d5 \triangle e7 18 \triangle e3 the d5-square is firmly in White's possession; however, 14... \triangle c5!? 15 \triangle c2 b4 or simply 14...b4!? is worth a look) 15 \triangle f1 \triangle h4 16 \triangle 1h2 \triangle xf3+17 \triangle xf3 and White has a characteristic space dominance, J.Polgar-Van der Sterren, Wijk aan Zee 1990.

13... \bigcirc e7 14 \bigcirc bd2 \bigcirc b7 15 \bigcirc c2 \bigcirc a8 16 \bigcirc e2 c6 17 dxe5 dxe5 18 b4 \bigcirc c7 19 \bigcirc b3 \bigcirc g6 20 \bigcirc a5 \bigcirc a6 21 \bigcirc d3 (D)



Ki.Georgiev-Karpov, Reggio Emilia 1989/90. White's position is easier to play, and Black must be wary of the cramping effect of the white knight on a5. Trying to break out with 21... 164 backfires after 22 \$\times xf4 \ext{ exf4 } 23 \ext{ e5!}\$ \$\frac{1}{2}\$fes 24 \$\times e4\$, hitting h7 and c6.

B2)

11... ②a5 12 &c2 ②b6

Black's problem is that the natural 12...c5 runs into 13 axb5 axb5 14 b4, exploiting the pin on the knight and winning a piece. Also good for White is 12...\(\hat{\omega}\) b7 13 d5 \(\hat{\omega}\) c4 14 b3 \(\hat{\omega}\) cb6 15 a5 \(\hat{\omega}\) c8 16 b4 c6 17 dxc6 \(\hat{\omega}\) xc6 18 \(\hat{\omega}\) bd2, when Black's numerous knight moves have just left the knights on very passive squares, Balashov-Furman, USSR Ch 1976.

The text-move deals with White's threat of 13 axb5, but allows White some queenside expansion.

13 b4! ②ac4 14 a5 ②d7 15 ଛb3 exd4 16 cxd4 c5 17 Ձf4! cxb4

Play now becomes very sharp, but the two central pawns give White the trump cards. 17...cxd4 18 \(\extit{\textit{a}}\)xc4 bxc4 19 \(\extit{\textit{a}}\)xd6 d3 20 e5 \(\extit{\textit{c}}\)e7 21 \(\extit{\textit{a}}\)a3 is good for White according to Fischer. After 21...c3 22 \(\textit{\textit{E}}\)e3! the black pawns drop off.

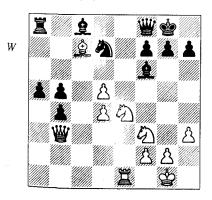
18 **②bd2 d5**

After 18... 2xa5 the simple 19 2xd6 looks good, while White can also consider 19 2xa5!? 2xa5 20 2xd6, when Black is faced with an awesome attack, for example 20... 28 21 e5 2e7 22 e6!.

19 exd5 ②xa5 20 **Qd6** ②xb3 21 豐xb3 **Ee8** 22 **Qc7! Exe1+** 23 **Exe1** 豐f8

The stem game in this line was Fischer-Matanović, Vinkovci 1968, when Black played 23... 對文元7, but after 24 單e8+ 包f8 25 對文數4 皇e7 26 型xe7 對d8 27 包e5 包g6 28 包c6 對f8 29 對c5 a5 30 單c7 對e8 31 d6 White's d-pawn was just too strong.

24 De4 a5 (D)



Black has three dangerous-looking passed pawns on the queenside, but even so, White's active pieces and central dominance are the most important factors. Fischer gave 25 2d6 a4! 26 \wxb4 \@e7 27 \@e5 \@xe5 28 dxe5 ₫d7 with equality, but in Chandler-P.Nikolić, Linares 1988, White came up with the powerful novelty 25 \dds!. Now lines such as 25...♠b7 26 ₩xb5 and 25... \(\) a6 26 \(\) xa5 just go to show what a bind Black finds himself in Nikolić tried 25...a4, but following 26 鱼d6 >d6 >d8 27 鱼xb4 鱼a6 28 夕d6 >e7 29 \forall f5 White's initiative proved too much. Black urgently requires something new here; otherwise 11... 2a5 looks distinctly unplayable.

B3)

11...**⊈b**7

The most popular reply. Black develops and connects his queen and rook. White's basic plan is to assault the b5-pawn, but first he must choose whether to close the centre or keep a fluid structure.

B31: 12 d5 103 B32: 12 ②a3 104

B31)

12 d5 De7

12... ②a5 13 ≜c2 transposes to Line B2, note to Black's 12th move.

13 axb5 axb5 14 **\(\Sigma\)** xa8 **\(\Sigma\)** xa8

This is the most natural recapture. After 14... 2xa8 15 2a3 Black has problems keeping hold of the b5-pawn, e.g.:

a) 15... b8 16 \(\Delta\)xb5! c6 (the none too subtle point behind White's last

move is 16... ₩xb5 17 \(\mathbb{Q}\)a4!, while 16...9\c5 17 \(\text{\$\text{\mathbb{E}}\d8 18 \(\text{\$\text{\$\text{\mathbb{E}}\a3 c6 19}\) \(\text{\Lambda}\) a2 cxd5 20 exd5 left Black without enough compensation for the pawn in Mokry-Votava, Czech Cht 1994/5) 17 dxc6 \(\Delta\)xc6. This was seen in Kindermann-Sturua, Biel 1991 and after 18 \bigcirc a3 \bigcirc c5 19 \bigcirc c2 d5 20 exd5 \bigcirc xd5 21 2c4 e4 22 2d4 2a8 Black had some (although probably not enough) compensation for the pawn. It also has to be mentioned that 18 (5)xd6 looks good, as after 18... ②c5 19 ≜xf7+! 罩xf7 20 ②xf7 尝xf7 21 ②g5+ 臭xg5 22 \(\textit{\textit{xg5}}\) White's rook and three pawns should be stronger than the two minor pieces. It's true that Black can snatch a pawn back with 22...\(\Delta xe4, but then 23 \(\textit{\textit{g}}\) xe7 \(\textit{\textit{g}}\) xe7 \(\textit{\textit{g}}\) xe7 \(\textit{\textit{g}}\) h5! looks very dangerous.

b) 15...②c5 16 ②c2 c6 17 b4 ②a6 18 dxc6 ②xc6 19 營d3 ②c7 (White can meet 19...營b8 with 20 ②d4! exd4 21 e5) 20 冨d1 營a8 21 營xd6 ②e6 22 營d3 and White can attack the weak pawns on b5 and d6, Hübner-Short, Skellefteå World Cup 1989.

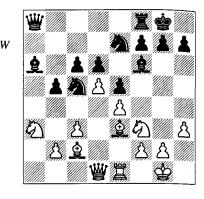
15 2a3 2a6 16 2e3

White can also begin kingside manoeuvres with 16 幻h2, e.g. 16... ②g6 17 幻g4 鱼e7 18 幻e3 置b8 19 鱼d2 幻c5 20 鱼c2 鱼c8 21 幻f5 鱼f8 22 豐f3 with an edge to White, Popović-Blagojević, Nikšić 1997.

16...**ᡚc**5

Sensibly kicking the bishop back to c2. Breaking with 16...c6? is a move too early, as after 17 dxc6 豐xc6 18 ②c2! Black will be embarrassed by ②b4.

17 \(\text{c2} \) c6 (D)



Black has achieved the desired ...c6 break, but once again this only signals the start of the real middlegame action.

18 b4 **②**d7 19 c4!? bxc4 20 **②**a4

Svidler-Gabriel, Bad Homburg 1998 now continued 20.... 鱼b7?! 21 ②xc4 cxd5 22 ②xd6 dxe4 23 ②h2 and White built up a dangerous initiative (Svidler also gives 23 ②xb7 營xb7 24 營xd7 營xd7 25 ②xd7 exf3 26 gxf3, when White's passed b-pawn provides him with excellent winning chances in the endgame).

B32)

12 Da3

This move became popular after Kasparov chose it in his 1990 World Championship clash with Karpov. By refusing to close the centre immediately, White keeps more options open, although Black too has more ways to generate counterplay.

12...exd4

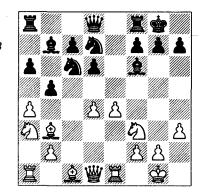
12... Db6 has been played a few times, chiefly by Varavin. The idea is that after 13 d5 2e7 14 axb5 axb5 15 e3 Black sacrifices a pawn with 15...c6!?. It seems to me that Black has reasonable play after 16 dxc6 2xc6 17 **全xb6 豐xb6** 18 豐xd6 罩fd8 19 數b4 數b7, and certainly Varavin has repeated this line on several occasions, so it must be treated with some respect. In Dolmatov-Varavin, Russian Ch 1996, White tried an interesting new approach with 16 We2!?, refusing the pawn and adopting a more strategic plan. The immediate idea is that 16...cxd5? can be answered by the powerful 17 營xb5. Instead, the game continued 16... \Bb8 17 dxc6 &xc6 18 \(\mathbb{Z}\)ad1 and Black had some problems dealing with the simple plan of ②c2-b4. After 18...②a4?! 19 \(\text{\ti}\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\text{\texi}\text{\text{\text{\t the weakness of the black pawns was becoming more and more apparent. Wedberg suggests 18... Dbc8, protecting b5 and d6, as an improvement, but after 19 鱼c5! 幽c7 20 鱼b4 單d8 Black is somewhat restricted.

$13 \operatorname{cxd4}(D)$

13...**E**e8

Black continues to put pressure on both centre pawns. Other lines include:

a) 13... ②b6?! 14 **②**f4! bxa4 15 **②**xa4 ②xa4 16 **쌀**xa4 a5 17 **②**d2! **三**e8 18 d5 ②b4 19 **②**xb4 axb4 20 **쌀**xb4



□ b8 21 wc4! gave White a clear advantage in Kasparov-Karpov, New York/Lyons Wch (18) 1990.

b) 13...②a5 14 \ a2 b4 15 \ Cc4 \ Cxc4 16 \ axc4 and now 16...\ a8 17 \ b3 \ axc4 18 \ axc4 \ axc4 19 \ axf7+\ b8 20 \ ad5 \ axd5 looks slightly better for White, but 16...d5 seems reasonable, e.g. 17 exd5 \ b6 18 \ ad3 \ axd5 and Black had a playable position in Ivanchuk-Xie Jun, Monaco Amber blindfold 1996. We await to see if anyone will repeat this with their eyes open!

14 \(\hat{\text{9}} \) f4 \(\hat{\text{9}} \) a5 15 \(\hat{\text{c}} \) c2 b4 16 \(\hat{\text{9}} \) b1 c5

With this move Black begins his counterattack on the white centre. However, there are some important alternatives:

a) 16...b3!? 17 \$\textit{2}\d3 c5 18 \$\textit{2}\bd2 cxd4 19 \$\text{2}\xd6 \$\text{\t

- b) 16...g6!?, blunting White's kingside offensive, deserves some consideration. After 17 心bd2 心f8 18 e5 心e6 19 全h6 dxe5 20 dxe5 全e7 21 全e4 全xe4 22 置xe4 營d5 23 營c2 罩ed8 Black had succeeded in equalizing in Ernst-Barkhagen, Haninge 1997.
- c) 16...夕f8!? is another enticing idea. Black plans to re-route this knight to the more active e6-square before starting central operations. After 17 ②bd2 (17 營d3!?) 17...②e6 18 全e3 c5 19 d5 ②f8 20 罩b1 c4 21 營e2 罩c8 a Benoni-type structure is reached in which Black's queenside counterplay compensates for White's solid centre, Svidler-Smagin, Russian Ch (St Petersburg) 1998.

17 **包bd2**

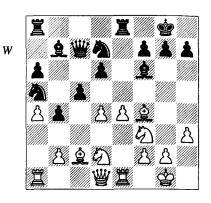
The d-pawn is hot. After 17 \(\Delta xd6? \)
b3!, 18 \(\Delta xb3? \) runs into 18...\(\Delta b6! \),
while 18 \(\Delta d3 \) allows 18...c4, picking up the e-pawn.

After the text-move, the d-pawn is attacked in earnest.

17...≝c7 (D)

In Onishchuk-Piket, Wijk aan Zee 1997, Black defended with 17...②f8, but after 18 e5! dxe5 19 dxe5 全e7 20 營e2 營b6 21 全d3 罩ad8 22 ②c4 ②xc4 23 全xc4 White had a very pleasant position. Black's queenside majority is going nowhere, giving White a free hand for operations on the kingside.

The position after 17... arose in Luther-B.Lalić, Hastings 1995/6. White continued with 18 \(\mathbb{L} = 1 \) \(\mathbb{L} = 1 \)



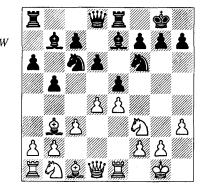
g6 and Black was allowed to consolidate his position. In his notes to the game, Lalić comes up with the far more critical 18 e5! dxe5 19 dxe5 and now:

- b) 19... ad8 20 25! 2xg5 21 2xg5 a8 22 2f4 and White not only possesses the bishop-pair, but also dangerous attacking chances on the kingside.
- c) Lalić gives the prophylactic 19...g6 as Black best defence, but after 20 2e4 2xe4 21 2xe4 2ad8 White has the powerful 22 2d5!, threatening 23 e6. 22...2xe5 fails to 23 2xe5 2xe5 24 2xe5 2xe5 25 2xe5 2xe5 26 2xf7+, while after 22...2e7 23 2g3 White keeps all the threats.

These lines all look quite dangerous for Black, so perhaps he could do worse than seek alternatives at moves 13 and 16.

12 The Zaitsev Variation

1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 &b5 a6 4 &a4 ⑤f6 5 0-0 &e7 6 Ee1 b5 7 &b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 &b7 10 d4 Ee8 (D)



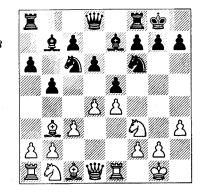
In the last twenty years the Zaitsev Variation has sprung from virtually nowhere to being perhaps the most important variation of the entire Ruy Lopez. Previously it was thought to be dubious on account of 11 2g5, attacking f7, but then Karpov's trainer Igor Zaitsev showed that Black could calmly retreat with 11... \models f8! and that 12 f4 came to nothing. Indeed it was discovered that White had nothing better than to go back with 12 \$\overline{\Omega} f3. This was the turning point for the opening. Karpov himself employed it in many classic World Championship battles with Kasparov and today it remains the choice of many top grandmasters.

The main advantage of the Zaitsev is that Black can exert very quick pressure on the e4-pawn, and this prevents White from carrying out the usual ∆bd2-f1-g3 knight manoeuvre until the tension in the centre is resolved. This is a major plus-point as White finds it harder than usual to develop smoothly. On the other hand, White still has many ways to try to keep an opening advantage. It must also be said that from a practical point of view the Zaitsev has the disadvantage that White can simply repeat moves starting, as described above, with 11 ⊅g5.

As the Zaitsev is such a tough nut to crack, I've decided to advocate two quite different systems for White after the standard moves 11 \(\Delta \) bd2 \(\Delta f8. \) The first is 12 d5, which has become quite popular recently. After this move, the play is quite positional in nature, with both sides battling over key central squares. The other line we will study is 12 a4, which is the traditional main line. Unlike 12 d5, this usually leads to ultra-sharp play, where White will try to land a knockout blow on the kingside. Sometimes White's attack can be ferocious, with all the pieces taking part, but Black's defensive resources cannot be underestimated, and if Black survives then his superiority on the queenside can often be a deciding factor.

The Theory of the Zaitsev Variation

1 e4 e5 2 🗹 f3 🖾 c6 3 🕸 b5 a6 4 🕸 a4 🖄 f6 5 0-0 🕸 e7 6 🖺 e1 b5 7 🕸 b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 🕸 b7 10 d4 (D)



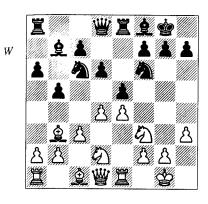
10...**≝**e8

This continues the theme of pressurizing the e4-pawn. Other ideas:

a) 10...exd4 gives up the centre prematurely and with accurate play White can hope for a substantial advantage, e.g. 11 cxd4 d5 12 e5 2e4 13 ②c3 ②a5 14 ②c2 f5 (14... ②b4 15 **Z**b8 allows White to initiate a standard 'Greek Gift' sacrifice with 18 **2**xh7+ **2**xh7 19 **2**g5+, when both 豐g4 f5 21 exf6 豐c8 22 ②e6+ 含xf6 23 d5 are devastating) 15 exf6 \(\textit{\pi}\x\)xf6 16 ②xe4 dxe4 17 ②xe4 ③xe4 18 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xe4 c5 19 \(\mathbb{Z}\)g4 cxd4 20 \(\mathbb{Q}\)g5 d3 21 盒xf6 豐xf6 22 豐xd3 豐xb2 23 豐d5+ \$\precent{\Phi}\text{8 24 \Pmed e1 and White has a strong attack, Tal-Lehmann, Hamburg 1960.

- b) 10... 2a5 is a reasonable transpositional move. Following 11 2c2, 11...c5 gives us a Chigorin, while Black can also continue with 11... 2c4 12 b3 2b6 13 2bd2 and now:
- b1) 13... Dbd7 reaches a type of Breyer position where Black has lost time, as it has taken the knight five moves to reach d7 rather than three. In Fischer-Stein, Sousse IZ 1967, White continued powerfully with 14 b4! and after 14...exd4 15 cxd4 a5 16 bxa5 c5 17 e5 dxe5 18 dxe5 2d5 19 2e4 2b4 20 2b1 2xa5 21 2e2 Black was facing a menacing attack.
- b2) After 13... \(\begin{align*}{0.6cm} \\ \text{E} & \text{White's simplest plan is to continue with } 14 \(\beta\) f1 \(\beta\) f8 15 \(\beta\) g3, when 15... h6 reaches the Smyslov Variation while 15... c5 16 a4 c4 17 a5 exd4 18 cxd4 cxb3 19 \(\beta\) xb3 gave White an edge in Beliavsky-Klovan, USSR 1977.
- c) 10... 2d7 has been seen a few times, although a significant proportion of these occasions have been preceded with 10... 2e8 11 2g5 2f8 12 2f3, when Black decides to avoid repetition. After 10... 2d7 White has the option of transposing to the Karpov Variation with 11 a4 2f6, or beginning the knight manoeuvre with 11 2bd2 and now:
- c1) 11...\$\\\\\$6 12 \$\\\\\$15 \$\\\\\$2c2 c5 16 d5 with an edge to White, Ljubojević-Karpov, Turin 1982.
- c2) 11...exd4!? 12 cxd4 ②b4 13 ②f1 c5 14 a3 (or 14 ②g3!?) 14...②c6 15 d5 ②ce5 16 ②xe5 dxe5 again with a small advantage, Ehlvest-Karpov, USSR Ch (Moscow) 1988.

11 2 bd2 2 f8 (D)



We will now study the two most important moves in this position:

109

113

A: 12 d5

B: 12 a4

A)

12 d5

Black is faced with a decision about where to move his knight:

A1: 12...**2e7** 109

A2: 12... 2b8 110

12...②a5 cannot be recommended. After 13 ②c2 c6 14 b4! ②c4 15 ②xc4 bxc4 16 dxc6 ②xc6 Black has problems regarding both the light squares and his loose c4-pawn. Am.Rodriguez-Suarez, El Vendrell 1994 continued 17 ②g5 h6 18 ②xf6 營xf6 19 ②a4! ②xa4 20 營xa4 營e6 21 黨ad1 黨ab8 22 ②d2 營c8 23 ②f1 黨b5 24 ②e3 and White's domination was very apparent.

A1)

12... De7 13 9 f1

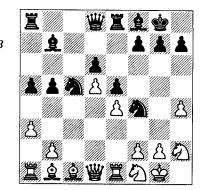
Transferring the knight to the kingside is pretty standard, but given that Black's knights are also heading in that direction it's worth considering a change of tack with 13 c4, e.g.:

- a) 13... ②d7 14 ②c2 c6 15 b3 罩c8 16 ②f1 營c7 17 ②e3 left White with a pleasant space advantage in Anand-Deshmukh, Calcutta 1992.
- b) 13...c6 14 皇c2 bxc4 15 dxc6 ②xc6 16 ②xc4 ②d4! 17 ②xd4 exd4 18 皇g5 (18 營xd4 d5! gives Black good counterplay) 18...d5 19 皇xf6 營xf6 20 e5 營h6 21 ②d2 皇b4 22 置e2 皇xd2 23 營xd2 營xd2 24 置xd2 置xe5 with an equal position, Topalov-Piket, Amsterdam 1996.

13... 2g6 14 23h2 2d7

14... 曾d7 15 ②g4 allows Black the possibility of 15... ②xe4!? 16 罩xe4 f5, although after 17 罩e1 fxg4 18 豐xg4 豐xg4 19 hxg4 ②e7 20 罩d1 White's position is still more pleasant and he can increase the pressure further with ②g3-e4.

15 a3 🖒 c5 16 🕹 a2 🖒 f4 17 c4 c6 18 cxb5 cxb5 19 🕹 b1 a5 20 h4! (D)

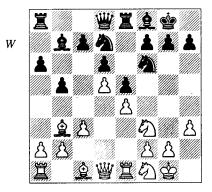


Planning to meet 20... what with 21 g3 包h3+22 常g2, when Black loses the knight. We are following a heavyweight manoeuvring contest, Topalov-Piket, Wijk aan Zee 1996, which continued 20...g6 21 g3 包h5 22 包g4 響e7 23 全c2 全c8 24 b3 and White kept a small advantage.

A2)

12...©b8 13 ©f1 ©bd7 (D)

The immediate 13...c6 is too hasty and only wakes up White's bishop on b3. After 14 dxc6 全xc6 15 包g3 罩a7 (15...包bd7 runs into 16 包g5!) 16 a4 罩d7 17 axb5 axb5 18 全g5 h6 19 全xf6 營xf6 20 包h2 罩c8 21 包g4 營d8 22 包e3 White is ready to occupy the juicy outpost at d5, Wang Zili-Henao, Thessaloniki OL 1988.



Now White has two different approaches:

A21: 14 ②3h2 110 A22: 14 ②g3 111

A21) 14 公3h2 Beginning the fight for the d5-square. This knight will come to g4, where it will exchange a protector of the d5-square.

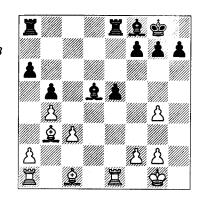
14...Dc5

Black can also play more directly with 14...c6, but this is certainly more risky. After 15 dxc6 \(\text{\fix}\) xc6 16 \(\text{\fix}\)g5. Short-Beliavsky, Groningen FIDE KO Wch 1997 continued 16... **2** c7 17 **2** f3 **豐b7** 18 ②g3 d5 19 ②g4 dxe4 20 **豐**f5! 2)d5 21 2)xe4 #e6 22 #ad1 and Black was under severe pressure. The game concluded 22...h5?! 23 De3! Df4 24 **a**xf4 **a**xe4 25 **x**d7! **a**xf5 26 **x**b7 exf4 27 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xf7! 1-0. No doubt Black has some improvements here, but his position does look difficult to defend. Short points out that 16...h6 17 \(\textit{\textit{a}}\) xf6 (4)xf6 also does not solve all Black's problems, due to 18 2g4!. White is winning the battle of the d5-square, because 18... 2xe4? 19 \frac{19}{2}f3 d5 loses to 20 Exe4 dxe4 21 Wxf7+. It certainly looks more sensible to chase the bishop off the important a2-g8 diagonal before proceeding with the advance ...c6.

15 \(\Delta c2 \) c6 16 b4 \(\Delta cd7 \) 17 dxc6 \(\Delta xc6 18 \(\Delta g4 \)

After this move Black achieves the ...d5 advance and the game fizzles out to equality. Another method is 18 \$\oldsymbol{\text{\text{\text{2}}}}\$ g5, which led to an unclear position after 18...\$\overline{\text{\text{\text{\text{c}}}}\$ d5 \$\overline{\text{\text{c}}}\$ g5 \$\overline{\text{\text{\text{\text{c}}}}\$ d5 \$\overline{\text{\text{c}}}\$ g4 \$\overline{\text{\text{c}}}\$ d5 \$\overline{\text{c}}\$ g3 \$\overline{\text{c}}\$ b5 \$\overline{\text{c}}\$ g3 \$\overline{\text{c}}\$ b7 \$\overline{\text{c}}\$ g3 \$\overline{\text{c}}\$ b7 \$\overline{\text{c}}\$ g3 \$\overline{\text{c}}\$ g5 \$\overline{\text{c}}\$ g5 \$\overline{\text{c}}\$ g7 \$\overline{\text{c}}\$ g5 \$\overline{\text{c}}\$ g7 \$\overline{\text{

18... 公xg4 19 hxg4 公b6 20 公e3 d5 21 exd5 公xd5 22 公xd5 豐xd5 23 豐xd5 全xd5 24 单b3 (D)



In the game Kasparov-Ivanchuk, Linares 1998, Black now played the inaccurate 24... 2e6?! and after 25 2xe6 2xe6 26 a4! White was still slightly better. 24... 2ad8! looks like the easiest way to reach a level endgame.

A22)

14 2 g3

White's most popular move. Black must now choose between breaking in the centre immediately or trying to improve his position first:

A221: 14...Øc5 111 A222: 14...g6 112

A221)

14...②c5 15 &c2 c6

Once Black has committed himself to ... 包c5 it makes sense to break immediately with ...c6, as any delay could prove to be costly. For example, after 15...a5 16 包h2 g6 17 豐f3 h5 18 全e3 包fd7 19 單ad1 豐e7 20 包gf1 全g7 21 全c1 White is perfectly ready to meet Black's ...c6, Short-Timman, El Escorial Ct (10) 1993. See Chapter 9 for more of this game.

16 b4 ②cd7 17 dxc6 ≜xc6 18 ≜b3 h6

Correctly preventing the pin of the f6-knight. After 18... \(\int \)b6 19 \(\text{\(\text{

19 2h4 2b6

The 19...②xe4 trick, unleashing an attack on h4, doesn't work because of the powerful reply 20 ₩h5!.

20 2hf5 2c4

20...d5!? led to some fireworks in Wells-Acs, Budapest 1997 after 21 公h5 公xh5 (21...且e6!?) 22 豐xh5 公d7 23 公xh6+!? (23 豐g4 also looks interesting) 23...gxh6 24 星e3 公f6 25 星g3+ 全h8 26 豐xf7 豐e7 27 豐g6 豐g7 28 豐f5, although with 28...全d7! Black was able to steer the position into a level endgame after 29 星xg7 全xf5 30 星f7 公xe4 31 星xf5 公xc3.

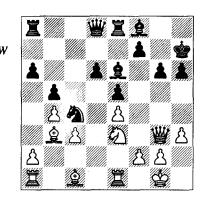
21 2h5 2xh5 22 \wind xh5 g6

An improvement over 22... 2d7 23 2xc4 bxc4 24 2e3 2e6 25 a4, when the d5-square is firmly in White's possession, Hjartarson-Gligorić, Reykjavik 1995.

23 **₩g4**

If 23 ②xh6+?, Black has 23... \$h7! 24 營f3 ②xh6, when 25 ②xh6 ③xh6 26 營xf7 單f8 wins for Black, while after 25 ②xc4 bxc4 26 營xf7+ ②g7 27 營xc4 ②b5 Black's piece is worth more than White's three pawns.

23...单d7 24 豐g3 全h7 25 包e3 单e6 (D)



Almasi-Ibragimov, Vienna 1996. Now White should play 26 \(\text{\(\text{\(2}\)}\) xc4 bxc4 27 \(\text{\(\text{\(2}\)}\)d1, maintaining a grip on d5.

A222)

14...g6 15 **Dh2**

Planning ②g4. Also possible is 15 \$e3, e.g. 15...②c5 16 \$c2 c6 17 b4 ②cd7 18 dxc6 \$xc6 19 \$b3 ②b6 20 營d3 and now:

- a) 20... **Z**a7 21 a4 (21 c4!? may be stronger) 21...bxa4 22 **Q**xa4 **Q**xa4 23 **Q**xb6 **W**xb6 24 **Z**xa4 **Z**c7 was equal in Anand-Ivanchuk, Monaco Amber rpd 1994.
- b) 20... \(\bar{L}\) b8 21 \(\bar{L}\) ad1 \(\bar{L}\) b7 22 \(\bar{L}\) h2 \(\bar{L}\) d7 (22... h5 23 \(\bar{L}\) f3 \(\bar{L}\) d7 24 \(\bar{L}\) g5! is slightly better for White) and instead of 23 \(\bar{L}\) xb6?! \(\bar{L}\) xb6 24 \(\bar{L}\) gf1 \(\bar{L}\) h6, which was equal in Short-Ivanchuk, Amsterdam 1994, White should play 23 f4! \(\ar{L}\) exf4 \(\bar{L}\) xf4 \(\bar{L}\) e6 25 \(\bar{L}\) f3, with a small plus.

15...h5!?

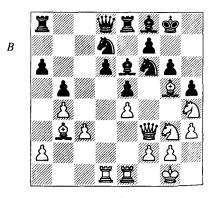
This move prevents 2g4, but also weakens g5, and the white knight quickly returns to f3 to eye this square. Other possibilities for Black:

- a) 15...c6 is premature here. After 16 dxc6 \(\preceq\)xc6 17 \(\preceq\)g5! White has the advantage.
- b) 15...\$\delta 18!? 16 \Qig 4 \Qig 8! (preparing ...h5 followed by ...\$\delta h6) 17 a4 h5 was Mencinger-Ibragimov, Groningen 1994. Here White should play 18 \Qin h2, preparing to come back to f3.
- c) 15...\$\times\$\c2 c6 17 b4 \$\times\$\cd7 18 dxc6 \(\times xc6 19 \) \(\times b3 \) \(\times b6 and here either 20 \(\times g5 \) or 20 \(\times g4 \) should be enough for an edge.

16 🗹 f3 🖾 c5 17 💄 c2 c6 18 b4 🖄 cd7 19 dxc6 🖢 xc6 20 🖺 b3 🖾 b6 21 🖢 g5 🖺 d7

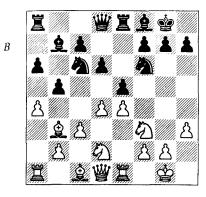
Black must be careful not to open up the centre too early. If 21.... 全 7 22 公 h4 d5 23 響f3! White's initiative starts to assume menacing proportions.

22 **公h4 兔e6 23 豐f3 公bd7 24** 里ad1 (D)



We are following Anand-Ivanchuk, Dos Hermanas 1996. The game is delicately balanced. Black is under some serious pressure on the kingside, but all his pieces are contributing towards defence, and he can hope to exploit the weak c3-pawn later on.

B) 12 a4 (D)



The traditional main line of the Zaitsev.

12...h6

This move, preventing \$\Q\$5 once and for all, is Black's most popular choice. Another method is 12...\mathbb{\

13 **≜**c2 exd4

This move initiates Black's most ambitious and aggressive plan. He presents the centre to White, but in return for this Black will gain serious

queenside counterplay. Even so, more conservative ideas also deserve some attention:

- a) 13...②b8!? (Black attempts to steer the game into Breyer channels) 14 ②d3 c6 15 ②f1 ②bd7 16 ②g3 g6 and now 17 b3 ②g7 18 營c2 營c7 19 ②e3 d5! led to unclear complications in Rechlis-Kraidman, Jerusalem 1986. Instead, White could consider 17 h4!, preparing to soften up the black kingside with h5.
- b) 13...置b8 lends indirect support to the b-pawn, but looks a bit passive to me. Sensible play with 14 axb5 axb5 15 全d3 全c8 16 包f1 全d7 17 包g3 豐c8 18 全d2 豐b7 19 b4 was enough to give White a significant plus in Geller-Gligorić, Sochi 1986.
- c) The non-committal 13...g6!? looks like the best of Black's alternatives. 14 2f1 exd4! 15 cxd4 2b4 gives Black lots of counterplay, so White should once again block the centre with 14 d5. Following 14...2b8, Black succeeded in obtaining a roughly level position in the game Ivanchuk-Ljubojević, Monaco rpd 1993 after 15 b3 c6 16 c4 bxc4 17 bxc4 a5, so perhaps White could consider 15 2d3!?, exerting immediate pressure on the b5-pawn.

14 cxd4 ②b4 15 ♠b1 c5!

Mobilizing the queenside pawn majority is obviously the most natural course for Black, but there are also some important alternatives in this position:

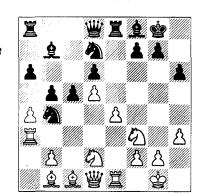
a) The slightly illogical-looking 15...bxa4 has been used by Karpov, but not since he was soundly beaten in

Kasparov-Karpov, New York/Lyons Wch (2) 1990, which went 16 Exa4 a5 17 Ea3 Ea6 18 ②h2 g6 19 f3! (bolstering the centre and thus denying Black any counterplay against e4) 19... 豐d7 20 ②c4 豐b5 21 Ec3! ②c8 22 ②e3 c6?! 23 豐c1 含h7 24 ②g4! and White was in firm control.

b) 15...g6 keeps Black's options open, but also gives White extra time to begin operations in the centre. In Anand-Kamsky, Las Palmas PCA Ct (1) 1995 White kept the advantage after 16 \(\mathbb{L}a3 \) \(\mathbb{L}g7 \) 17 e5! dxe5 18 dxe5 \(\mathbb{L}h5 \) 19 axb5 axb5 20 \(\mathbb{L}b3 \) c5 21 \(\mathbb{L}e4 \) \(\mathbb{L}xe5 \) 22 \(\mathbb{L}xc5! \) \(\mathbb{L}xf3 \) 23 \(\mathbb{L}xf3 \) \(\mathbb{L}gxf3 \)

c) 15... 營d7 was tried in Anand-Kamsky, Las Palmas PCA Ct (9) 1995. After 16 b3 g6 17 兔b2 兔g7 18 營c1 置ac8 19 兔c3 c5 20 d5 the game reached a Benoni-type set-up which is favourable to White, due to Black's poor bishop on b7, which is simply biting on White's granite centre.

16 d5 **2**d7 17 **2**a3 (D)



A crucial position in the 12 a4 Zaitsev. Black has to choose between two distinct courses of action:

B1: 17...c4 114

B2: 17...f5 116

B1)

17...c4

In the late 1980s this move was much more fashionable than 17...f5, but for some reason it has now taken more of a back seat. Nevertheless, it is fully playable and perhaps more logical than 17...f5. Black is certainly second best on the kingside, so he refuses to make a weakening pawn move and concentrates immediately on queenside counterplay. White must play very actively, as given another couple of moves, Black will entrench a knight on d3 after ... \$\infty\$c5.

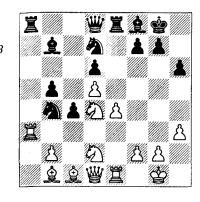
18 axb5

I'm endorsing this move rather than 18 ②d4, as the theoretical position arising after 18 ②d4 豐f6 19 ②2f3 ②d3! 20 ②xd3 b4 appears fine for Black. 21 黨al cxd3 22 豐xd3 ②c5 gives Black plenty of counterplay, while 21 ②xc4 bxa3 22 b3 ②c5 affords White compensation for the exchange, but no more than that. Anand-Kamsky, Las Palmas PCA Ct (5) 1995 continued 23 豐c2 豐g6 and here Anand could find nothing better than to repeat moves with 24 ②h4 豐f6 25 ②hf3 豐g6 26 ②h4.

18...axb5 19 **(D)**

Now we will consider two main lines for Black:

B11: 19...⊆xa3 115 **B12: 19...⊴e5** 116

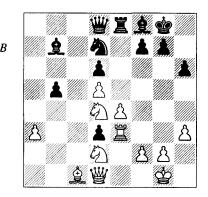


19... Wb6 20 包f5 包e5 21 里g3 g6 is also not bad, when White's attack looks dangerous, but Black has threats of his own, including ... Ded3. Yang Xian-Lin Ta, China 1988 continued 22 ②f3 ②ed3 23 Qe3 Yd8! (23... Yc7? 24 ②3h4 looks strong for White) 24 皇xh6 曾f6! (24... 包xe1 25 曾xe1 包xd5 26 豐c1! 包e7 27 鱼xf8 罩xf8 28 豐h6 gives White a winning attack) and after 25 \(\text{\text}\xxf8?\) \(\text{\text}\xxf8,\) White suddenly had too many pieces en prise. 25 \(\mathbb{Z}\)e2 is stronger, when 25... \(\mathbb{Z}\) xe4!? 26 \(\mathbb{Z}\) xe4 ₩xf5 can be answered by 27 \(\mathbb{Z}\)f4!, so perhaps Black should play 25... Za1 instead. In any case, it's quite surprising that we have seen so little of 19...**₩**b6.

B11)

19...**≝**xa3

In this line Black obtains a passed pawn on d3, which is usually quite difficult to keep hold of. However, Black can hope that the inconvenience White experiences in extracting the pawn will give him time to organize effective counterplay.



22... 夕e5

The other way to defend d3 is with 22... 2c5 23 \(\delta\) b2:

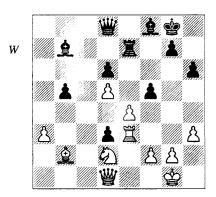
a) 23... 營a5 24 ②f5 g6 25 ②g3 ②g7 26 ②xg7 含xg7 27 ②b3 營xa3 28 ②xc5 營xc5 29 置xd3 left White with the advantage in Kotronias-Gligorić, Yugoslav Cht (Nikšić) 1997, because Black's bishop is out of play and his kingside dark squares are very weak. In fact the end was not long in coming: 29...b4 30 置b3 置c8 31 營a1+ 含g8 32 營f6 ②a6 33 置f3 營c7 34 e5 ②b7 35 exd6 1-0. There is no defence to ②h5.

b) 23....全c8 24 公c6 營h4 (initiating active play against the white centre; this is the most logical way to continue, as Black must try to disturb White's position as much as possible) 25 全d4 f5 26 公f3 營h5 27 e5 f4 28 至e1 dxe5 29 公cxe5 營f5, Anand-Beliavsky, Madrid 1998, and now Anand suggests 30 營b1, keeping an eye on b5 and d3, as a way to keep the advantage.

23 4 4f3 f5!

The only way! 23...公c4 24 罩xd3 營d7 25 公xc4 bxc4 26 罩e3 left Black with no compensation for the pawn in Ivanchuk-Kruppa, Frunze 1988.

24 🖾 xe5 🗒 xe5 25 🏚 b2 🗒 e7 (D)

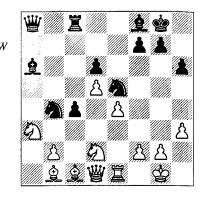


The d3-pawn is doomed, but Black has succeeded in creating some counterplay against White's centre. Glek-Kharlamov, corr 1988 continued 26 exf5! Exe3 27 fxe3 全xd5 28 營g4 營c8 29 營d4 全c4 30 公xc4!? bxc4 31 f6 with a highly complex position, where White's threats on the kingside, coupled with the passed a-pawn, outweigh Black's far-flung passed pawns.

B12)

19... De5 20 Exa8 Wxa8 21 Dxb5 Ec8

This is better than 21... 曾a5 22 包a3 ②a6 (both 22... ②ed3? 23 ②dxc4 and 22... ②bd3 23 ②axc4 ②xc4 24 ②xd3 favour White) 23 置e3 豐c5 24 置c3, when Black doesn't quite have enough play for the pawn, Anand-Kamsky, Las Palmas PCA Ct (7) 1995. 22 2a3 2a6 (D)



We are following de Firmian-A.Ivanov, USA Ch (Parsippany) 1996, which continued 23 置e3 包bd3 24 全xd3 cxd3 25 b3 鱼e7 26 包dc4 and after 26...鱼g5 27 包xd6 置d8 28 包dc4 全xc4 29 包xc4 盒xe3 30 全xe3 包xc4 31 bxc4 營a3 32 c5, the white pawns looked very dangerous. Instead, the clearest route to equality looks to be 26...包xc4! 27 bxc4 全xc4 28 包xc4 是xc4 29 国xd3 營a1 30 全e3 營xd1+31 国xd1 国xe4.

B2)

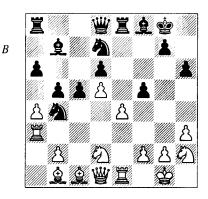
17...f5

Currently the main line of the 12 a4 Zaitsev. Black ambitiously breaks open the white centre, but in doing so he weakens his kingside.

18 ②h2!? (D)

Other moves, such as 18 \(\mathbb{Z}\)ae3 and 18 exf5, exist, but I believe the textmove presents Black with at least as many problems. The knight move opens the way for both the queen and the a3-rook to join the attack, while

after ...fxe4 the knight can be very powerfully posted on g4.



18...Øf6

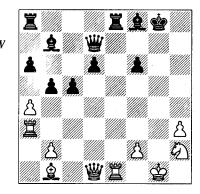
18...c4 19 exf5 包c5 20 置xe8 營xe8 21 置g3 包bd3 22 f6 g6 23 b3, as in Ivanchuk-Karpov, Monaco Amber rpd 1993, presents us with a crazy position typical for the 12 a4 Zaitsev. The whole board is on fire, but somehow I would prefer to be White, as you get the impression that one slip from Black would end up with his king being checkmated!

18...\$\delta\$h8 looks a bit too slow to me. In Dovzhik-Hedman, Budapest 1993, White built up an enormous attack after 19 置g3 包f6 20 包hf3! fxe4 21 包xe4 \delta xd5 22 包xf6 \delta xf6 23 \delta d2!. Here Black tried 23...\delta xb2 but after 24 \delta xb4! \delta xb4 25 \delta xd5 \delta xe1+ 26 \delta xe1 \delta xb1 27 \delta xa8 \delta xe1+ 28 \delta h2 \delta g8 29 \delta 63 \delta 130 \delta d5+ \delta h7 31 \delta f3 White had come out firmly ahead in the complications.

19 **E**f3

Trying to force Black to capture on e4. An even more direct attempt at this

is with 19 g4!?. Now Black has to be quite careful. For example, 19... 2xe4? 20 ②xe4 fxe4 21 ≜xe4 gives White a dream position, as Black's minor pieces are firmly cut off from the kingside action, of which there's bound to be plenty. 19...fxe4! is much stronger, planning to meet 20 2xe4 with 20... 2xd5. Leko-Almasi, Dortmund 1998 continued 20 g5!? hxg5 21 ②xe4 ②bxd5! (getting this knight back into the defence is very important; both 21... \(\textit{\textit{21}}\) xd5?! 22 \(\textit{\textit{2xg5}}\) and 21... \(\textit{\textit{2}}\) xe4 22 \(\text{\$\text{xe4}}\) look very promising for White) 22 鱼xg5 幽d7 23 鱼xf6 ②xf6 24 \triangle xf6+ gxf6 (D).



Now, instead of the game continuation 25 ②g4 ②g7, Almasi recommends 25 ③g3+ ②g7 26 ②g6 爲xe1+27 營xe1 當f8 with a very unclear position. Black's queenside pawns will roll down the board, but White can commence a dangerous attack with 營d1-h5 and ②g4.

19...**ℤ**e5

19...fxe4?! falls in far too easily with White's plans. After 20 ∑xe4

②xe4 21 ②xe4 the b7-bishop and the b4-knight struggle to get back into action and 21... [xe4? 22 [xe4 ②xd5 fails to 23 [xf8+!] 劉xf8 24 [xb4! cxb4 25] 劉xd5+.

Black has also tried 19... 2c8, but removing the bishop from attacking d5 looks a bit artificial to me. Pupo-Rivera, Havana Capablanca mem 1992 continued 20 exf5 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xe1 + 21 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xe1 \(\mathbb{Z}\)bxd5 22 \(\mathbb{Z}\)e4 \(\mathbb{Z}\)a7 23 \(\mathbb{Z}\)g4, when all of White's pieces were storming the black king.

20 Exf5

Preparing a fianchetto with 20 b3!? also poses Black some problems, e.g.:

- a) 20...②xe4 21 ②xe4 fxe4 22 Ig3 h5 23 Ixe4 ②xd5 24 & b2 ②f6 25 If4 and Black is getting totally overrun on the kingside, Grünfeld-Kraidman, Tel-Aviv 1992.
- b) 20...fxe4! 21 Exf6!? Wxf6 22 2g4 Wf7 23 2xe5 dxe5 24 2xe4 2xd5 25 Wg4 gives us another typical position. White's queenside is about to disintegrate, but Black will have to stave off quite a few mating threats before he can hope to cash in.

20... xf5 21 exf5 &xd5 22 2 g4

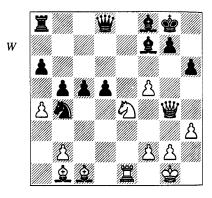
This is stronger than 22 24 £xe4 23 £xe4 d5 24 £f3 c4 25 £e6 2d3, as in Khalifman-Karpov, Reggio Emilia 1991/2, when we see an example of White's position going wrong. The kingside attack has been blocked and Black is ready to mow White down

through pushing his powerful central pawns.

22...**≜**f7

Coming back to defend the shaky light squares. This is better than the alternative 22... 2xg4 23 hxg4 2f7, as after 24 3f3 White threatens to do some damage with g5, and 24...2e7 walks into a double attack with 25 We2.

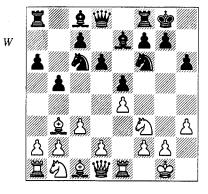
23 ②xf6+ ₩xf6 24 ②e4 ₩d8 25 ₩g4 d5 (D)



Black begins the central pawn-roller. This position, which occurred in Wahls-Enigk, Berlin 1993, is beautifully poised. White will obviously have lots of dangerous attacking ideas, but Black is reasonably well protected and can take heart from the fact that most endgames will give him good winning chances due to the passed d-pawn.

13 The Smyslov Variation

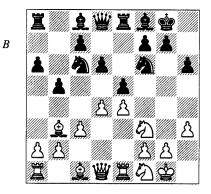
1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 ②b5 a6 4 ②a4 ②f6 5 0-0 ③e7 6 ဩe1 b5 7 ②b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 h6 (D)



Black prepares to bolster the e5pawn with ... \(\begin{aligned} \text{\$\mathbb{A}\$} & \text{\$\mat of 9...h6 is to execute this plan without having to worry about \$\alpha\$g5. However, as we see in the Zaitsev Variation. Black need not worry about this move. Indeed, the Smyslov Variation has much in common with the Zaitsev, but with the important difference that against the Smyslov, White has time to carry out the Dbd2-f1-g3 manoeuvre, thus solving all his development problems. For this reason, the Smyslov is far less popular than the Zaitsev, but it must be respected as a solid, if somewhat passive, defence. White has a few different ways to play, but once again I'm advocating the main line.

The Theory of the Smyslov Variation

1 e4 e5 2 🗹 f3 🗟 c6 3 🗟 b5 a6 4 🕸 a4 🖄 f6 5 0-0 🕸 e7 6 🖺 e1 b5 7 🕸 b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 h6 10 d4 🖺 e8 11 🖾 bd2 🕸 f8 12 🖾 f1 (D)



Black now has two main options:

A: 12...**2d7** 119 **B:** 12...**2b7** 120

A)

12...**≜**d7 13 **⊘**g3 **⊘**a5 14 **≜**c2 c5 15 b3!

Preparing to develop the bishop on b2, should Black exchange pawns with ...cxd4.

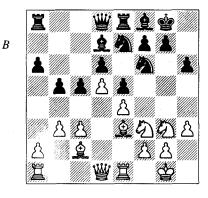
15...€)c6

After 15...cxd4 16 cxd4 2c6 White can slowly improve the position of his

pieces, knowing that his central superiority will be sufficient for an advantage. Gufeld-Savon, Vilnius Z 1975 continued 17 全b2 星c8 (17...g6 18 營d2 全g7 19 星ad1 is even stronger for White as the d6-pawn is very weak) 18 營d2 營b6 19 星ad1 and White was very comfortable indeed.

16 d5 ②e7 17 **Q**e3 (D)

Also possible is 17 c4, for example 17...②g6 18 ②e3 ②f4 19 Wd2 ②6h5 20 ③d1 ②xg3 21 fxg3 ②h5 22 g4 with a slight advantage for White, Popović-Djurić, Sarajevo 1984.



17...**∕**∑g6

After 17... 豐c7 18 豐d2 夕g6 White should slowly build up a kingside attack, e.g. 19 罩ad1 罩eb8 20 夕f5 a5 21 g4, as in Stull-Augustin, Pula Z 1975.

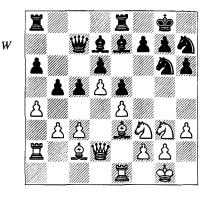
18 **₩d2 ②h7** 19 a4 **≜**e7

Exchanging pieces is generally a good policy in a cramped position, but here 19...心h4 loses too much time. After 20 心xh4 豐xh4 21 豐e2 豐d8 22 b4 豐c7 23 罩ec1 White had a clear advantage in *Deep Blue*-Kasparov, New York (2) 1997.

20 Ha2!

I like this move, which threatens a gradual increase in pressure on the queenside. 20 \$\omega\$f5 \$\omega\$xf5 21 exf5 \$\omega\$h4 22 \$\omega\$xh4 \$\omega\$xh4 was not so clear in Lobron-Short, Brussels 1983.

20...₩c7 (D)



White has a small plus. Tošić-Abramović, Yugoslav Cht 1997 continued 21 置eal bxa4 22 b4! cxb4 23 cxb4 公h4 (or 23...a5 24 全xa4 axb4 25 全xd7 置xa2 26 置xa2 豐xd7 27 豐xb4, with 公f5 to follow) 24 公xh4 全xh4 25 公f5 全xf5 26 exf5 全g5 27 全xg5 公xg5 28 全xa4 置f8 29 全c6 and White picked up the a6-pawn.

B)

12...⊈b7 13 **②**g3 **②**a5

13...g6 14 a4 ②a5 15 ♠c2 transposes to the next note.

14 &c2 Øc4

Zeb8 20 c4 and White's space advantage is quite evident, Korchnoi-Smyslov, Rovinj/Zagreb 1970.

15 b3 **2**b6 16 a4

Simple development with 16 2d2 also promises White an edge, for example 16...c5 17 d5 g6 18 We2, as in Gheorghiu-Gligorić, Teesside 1972.

16...bxa4

Here Black has a couple of important alternatives:

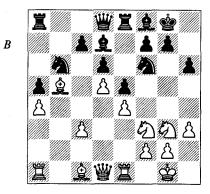
- a) 16...c5 17 d5 c4 18 b4 \(\text{Qc8} 19 \) \(\text{Qc3} \) \(\text{Qc4} \) 20 a5! \(\text{Qc8} 21 \) \(\text{Wd2} \) \(\text{Qch7} 22 \) \(\text{Ph2} \) \(\text{Qc5} \) 25 g4 g6 26 \(\text{Qc3} \) g3 f6 27 \(\text{Eh1} \) \(\text{Ef8} 28 \) \(\text{Sg2} \) \(\text{Ef7} 29 \) f3 and the simple plan of h4 proved to be decisive in Fischer-Gligorić, Rovinj/Zagreb 1970.
- b) 16...d5!? 17 ②xe5 dxe4 18 \(\beta\)b2! (after 18 ②xe4 ♀xe4 19 ♠xe4 Black has the tactical trick 19... "xe5!, when 20 ♠xa8 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xe1+ 21 \(\mathbb{Z}\)xe1 \(\overline{\Omega}\)xa8 is in Black's favour) 18...c5 19 ②xe4! (19 ②h5 cxd4 20 cxd4 ②bd5 was unclear in Borocz-Lukacs, Budapest 1998) 19... ②xe4 20 \ \(\) xe4 \ \(\) xe4 21 \ \(\) xe4 bxa4 and now Scholl-Gligorić, Amsterdam 1971 fizzled out to equality after 22 bxa4 f6 23 公c6 營d5 24 置xe8 \mathbb{Z} xe8 25 dxc5 \mathbb{Z} xd1+ 26 \mathbb{Z} xd1 \mathbb{Z} xa4. In my opinion, White can keep things going with 22 \(\mathbb{e}\)f3!, e.g. 22...f6 23 ව්g6 axb3 24 ව්xf8 🗓xf8 25 dxc5 ②d7 26 罩d4 營e8 27 營d5+ 罩f7 28 \(\begin{aligned}
 \begin{aligned}
 \begin{alig very dangerous.

17 bxa4 a5 18 **≜**d3 **≜**c6

Again Black has other options:

- a) 18...d5 19 exd5 exd4 (19...少fxd5 20 公xe5 公xc3 21 豐g4 gives White a menacing kingside initiative) 20 置xe8 豐xe8 (or 20...公xe8 21 c4 c5 22 dxc6 全xc6 23 公e5! 全b7 24 全b2, when 24...全c5 can be powerfully met by 25 豐h5) 21 全b5! 豐d8 22 c4 and the d4-pawn is ready to be plucked.
- b) 18...\$a6!? 19 \$xa6 \$\mathbb{Z}xa6 20\$ dxe5 dxe5 21 \$\mathbb{Z}xd8 \$\mathbb{Z}xd8 22 \$\mathbb{Z}xe5\$ \$\mathbb{Z}d6\$ (Winsnes-Balashov, Stockholm 1992/3) and now 23 \$\mathbb{Z}f4 g5 24 \$\mathbb{Z}g4\$ \$\mathbb{Z}xf4 25 \$\mathbb{Z}xf6+ \$\mathbb{Z}f8 26 e5 keeps a small advantage.

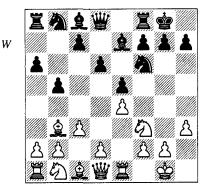
19 d5 &d7 20 &b5 (D)



This position arose in Anand-Kamsky, Linares 1991. Here Black went wrong with 20... \(\textit{\textit{L}}\) xb5? and after 21 axb5 \(\textit{\textit{L}}\) fd7 22 \(\textit{\textit{L}}\) c2 \(\textit{\textit{L}}\) c5 23 c4 \(\textit{\textit{L}}\) d7 24 \(\textit{\textit{L}}\) e3 a4 25 \(\textit{\textit{L}}\) a3 Black's a-pawn was under heavy pressure. 20... \(\textit{L}\) c8 is a more resilient defence, although White still holds a significant space advantage.

14 The Breyer Variation

1 e4 e5 2 🖄 f3 🖄 c6 3 🕸 b5 a6 4 🕸 a4 🖄 f6 5 0-0 🕸 e7 6 🖺 e1 b5 7 🕸 b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 🖄 b8 (D)



This knight retreat may look rather odd, but this is merely the first move of a logical regrouping plan. Black's idea is to bring his knight to d7 where it supports the e5-pawn and frees the c-pawn so that it may advance to c5 and challenge the centre. In addition Black can post his bishop on b7 where it directly attacks the e4-pawn. This pressure can be enhanced by the manoeuvre 268.

If Black's plan has a weakness, then it's the relative slowness of the idea. This gives White ample time to bolster the e4-pawn and carry out the normal knight manoeuvre Dbd2-f1-g3. The line I'm recommending for White is the most popular one at master level.

White can play on both the kingside and queenside, and has a comfortable space advantage.

The Theory of the Brever Variation

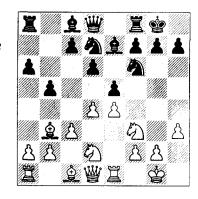
1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 &b5 a6 4 &a4 ②f6 5 0-0 &e7 6 Ee1 b5 7 &b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 ②b8 10 d4 ②bd7

10...♠b7 is a move-order trick from Black to avoid lines beginning with 10...♠bd7 11 c4!?, which was once quite fashionable for White. After 10...♠b7 White can simply transpose with 11 ♠bd2 ♠bd7, but 11 dxe5! is much stronger:

- a) 11... \(\tilde{\D}\)xe4 12 e6 fxe6 13 \(\tilde{\D}\)xe6+ \(\drive{\D}\)h8 14 \(\tilde{\D}\)d5 \(\tilde{\D}\)c5 15 \(\tilde{\D}\)xb7 \(\tilde{\D}\)xb7 16 a4 leaves Black woefully weak on the light squares, Gligorić-Benko, Yugoslavia Ct 1959.
- b) 11...dxe5 12 wxd8 axd8 13 2xe5 2xe4 14 ae3 af6 15 2g4 2d7 16 2d2 2xd2 17 axd2 afe8 18 af4 and now the game Keres-Benko, Yugoslavia Ct 1959 ended 18...axe1+?! 19 axe1 ac8 20 ac2 g6? 21 ad1! 1-0. 18...c5 would have offered more resistance, but White's pieces are still far better coordinated after 19 axe8+ axe8 20 ad1.

11 **(D)**bd2 (D)

11...**≜**b7



11... 温e8?? 12 ②f1?? 单b7 13 单c2 transposed into the main line in J.Polgar-Spassky, Budapest (10) 1993, with neither player noticing that after 12 单xf7+! 曾xf7 13 ②g5+ 曾g8 14 ②e6 Black can resign! This is all the more shocking given that Spassky is a renowned expert in the Breyer from both sides of the board.

12 **⊈**c2

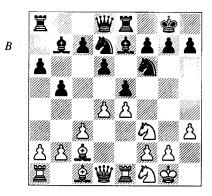
Supporting the e4-pawn, so that White can carry out the knight maneuvre to g3.

12...**≝e**8

Preparing to bolster the kingside with ...\$\tilde{6}\$ f8 and ...\$\tilde{6}\$. Black can also expand on the queenside with 12...\$\tilde{5}\$, when 13 \$\tilde{2}\$f1 \$\mathbb{\textsf{E}}\$e8 14 \$\tilde{2}\$g3 \$\mathbe{2}\$f8 15 d5 g6 16 a4 reaches the main line, but White can also delay the knight manoeuvre, e.g. 13 b3!? (preventing a later ...\$\tilde{4}\$) 13...\$\mathbe{\textsf{E}}\$e8 14 d5 g6 15 a4 \$\mathbe{\textsf{E}}\$b8 16 b4! c4 17 \$\tilde{6}\$f1 \$\mathbe{2}\$f8 18 \$\mathbe{2}\$g5 \$\mathbe{2}\$g7 19 \$\mathbe{\textsf{E}}\$d2 \$\tilde{6}\$b6 20 a5 \$\tilde{6}\$bd7 21 g4 \$\mathbe{\textsf{E}}\$h8 22 \$\tilde{6}\$g3 \$\mathbe{\textsf{E}}\$g8 23 \$\mathbe{\textsf{E}}\$g2 \$\mathbe{\textsf{E}}\$f8 24 \$\mathbe{\textsf{E}}\$h1 and White has reached an ideal position, Kavalek-Gligorić, Nice OL 1974. The queenside is completely

blocked, leaving White a free hand to build up a gradual attack on the other wing.

13 ②f1 (D)



13...**≜**f8

Smashing open the centre with 13...d5!? is an interesting idea, but White can remain on top after 14 \(\Delta xe5! \) \(\Delta xe5 \) 15 dxe5 \(\Delta xe4, \) when the position is more reminiscent of the Open Lopez. After 16 f3 Black has two options:

- a) 16... 2g5 17 2g3 2c5+18 2h2 f6 19 2xg5 fxg5 20 2b1 h6 21 2d1! (it's worth expending two tempi to force Black to weaken his light squares so badly) 21... 2e6 22 2f5 h5 23 2d2 and White enjoys a big positional advantage, Lobron-Portisch, Wijk aan Zee 1985.
- b) 16... ©c5 17 b4 ©d7 18 f4 c5 19 d3 ©f8 20 bxc5 &xc5+21 &e3 and White retains excellent attacking prospects, Greenfeld-Shvidler, Israel 1984.

14 2 g3 g6

14...c5 15 d5 g6 16 a4 comes to the same thing.

15 a4 c5

It's important for Black to claim some space on the queenside. After the plausible 15... 27 it's now the right time for 16 d5!. Black wishes to break with ...c6, but with the bishop on g7, this leaves the d6-pawn weak. In fact Black can force through ...c6 with 16... 8b, but then White has enough time to support the pawn-chain with 17 b3 c6 18 c4, with a space advantage. Grünfeld-Lev, Tel-Aviv 1990 continued 18...bxc4 19 bxc4 a5 20 2e3 8c7 21 8d2 2a6 22 2ac1 2eb8 23 c5! cxd5 24 exd5 dxc5 25 d6, when the passed d-pawn was very powerful.

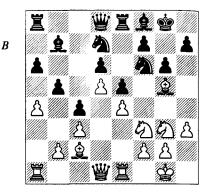
16 d5 c4

This is the logical follow-up to Black's last move. The c5-square is vacated for the knight, where it can eye the outposts at b3 and d3. The only important alternative is 16...\Db6, when 17 \(\mathbb{E}\)e2, pressurizing the b5-pawn, is the most testing response. Now 17...c4 looks rather silly with knight on b6, so Black should play 17...\Data xa4 18 \(\mathbb{L}\)xa4 bxa4 bxa4 19 \(\mathbb{L}\)xa4, when we reach a position where Black has the bishop-pair, but the position is quite closed and Black's queenside structure is compromised. Here are a couple of lines:

- a) 19... 2d7 20 IIa3 2b6 21 2h2 2g7 22 2g4 2c8 23 c4 2xg4 24 hxg4, when White has more space and the better minor pieces, Torre-Gligorić, Bad Lauterberg 1977.
- b) 19...\$\oldsymbol{\text{c}} \text{c} 8 20 \$\oldsymbol{\text{g}} 5 \text{ h6} 21 \$\oldsymbol{\text{g}} \text{c} 3 \oldsymbol{\text{b}} 8 22 \$\oldsymbol{\text{g}} \text{c} 1 \oldsymbol{\text{h}} 7 (22...\$\oldsymbol{\text{d}} \text{d} 7 \oldsymbol{looks} stronger) 23 \$\oldsymbol{\text{w}} \text{c} 2 \text{ h5} 24 \$\oldsymbol{\text{d}} 2 \oldsymbol{\text{g}} \text{c} 7 25 \$\oldsymbol{\text{c}} \text{c4}, and the knight has found a

wonderful outpost on c4, Geller-Romanishin, USSR 1978.

17 🙎 g5 (D)



White develops his last minor piece and sets about trying to control some dark squares on the kingside.

17...h6

Gaining time on the bishop, although White will later regain a tempo by attacking h6 with \delta d2.

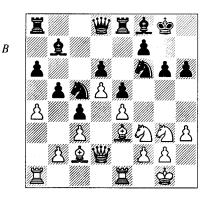
Black has many alternatives at this point:

- a) 17... 鱼g7 18 幽d2 幽e7 (alternatively, 18... 包c5 19 包h2 h5 20 含h1 幽c7 21 鱼h6 鱼h8 22 f4 exf4 23 幽xf4 置ab8 24 axb5 axb5 25 包f3 置bd8 26 置ad1 with an edge for White, Balashov-Baikov, USSR 1974) 19 置a3 響f8 20 置ea1 包c5 21 豐c1 置ec8 22 鱼e3 包fd7 23 包d2 and White has a slight advantage, Geller-Abramović, Moscow 1982.
- b) 17... 2c5 18 2d2 2e7 19 2h6 2fd7 20 2h2 2b8 21 2f1 2c8 22 axb5 axb5 was Kavalek-Spassky, Montreal 1979 and now 23 2g4 looks promising, e.g. 23... 2f6 24 2xf6+ 2xf6 25

f4 exf4 26 wxf4 2d7 27 e5!, freeing the e4-square and creating a dangerous attack.

- c) 17...重b8 18 營d2 全c8 19 公h2 (the simple plan of 19 axb5 axb5 20 重a2 皇g7 21 重ea1 also gives White an edge, Spassky-Karpov, Leningrad Ct (10) 1974) 19... 全e7 20 axb5 axb5 21 会h1 公xd5!? 22 全xe7 公xe7 23 營xd6 置b6 24 營d2 公c5 25 營e3 營c7 26 置ed1 and the weak dark squares on the kingside cause Black some concern, Popović-Gligorić, Yugoslavia 1980.
- d) 17.... 全 7 18 全 3 營 c 7 19 互 a 3 ② c 5 20 營 c 2 全 f 8 21 互 e a 1 once again gives White a typical small advantage, Ciocaltea-Spassky, Dortmund 1973.

18 **@e3 ②c5** 19 **營d2** (D)



19...h5

If Black defends with 19...堂h7, then the most promising plan is a direct kingside attack involving f4. For example, 20 包h2 皇g7 21 罩f1 and now:

a) 21...②xa4 22 ②xa4 bxa4 23 Xxa4 a5 24 f4 h5 25 fxe5 dxe5 26 ②g5 ③a6 (Timman-Portisch, Reggio Emilia 1984/5) and now Simić's suggestion of 27 響f2 looks good for White.

b) 21...h5 (it looks rather illogical to play ...\$h7 and ...h5, since, with the g5-square available to White, the black king can be exposed) 22 \$\oldsymbol{\Omega}\$f3! \$\oldsymbol{\Omega}\$fd7 23 \$\oldsymbol{\Omega}\$g5+\$\oldsymbol{\Omega}\$g8 24 f4 f6 25 f5! fxg5 26 fxg6 \$\oldsymbol{\Omega}\$f8 27 \$\oldsymbol{\Omega}\$xg5 \$\oldsymbol{\Omega}\$e8 28 \$\oldsymbol{\Omega}\$f5 and White's attack is very strong, Zagorovsky-Diaconescu, corr 1988.

White continues to combine play on both sides of the board. 21 全h6 used to be quite common, but it seems that after 21...全f8! White's best move is to retain the bishops with 22 全g5!, as 22 全xf8 至xf8 23 營h6 公h7! appears to defend for Black.

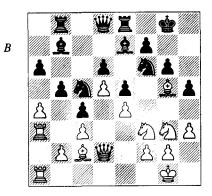
21...ДЬ8

After 21...公fd7, 22 鱼xe7 營xe7 23 置eal 全g7 24 axb5 axb5 25 置xa8 置xa8 26 置xa8 鱼xa8 gave Black equality in Tatai-Dorfman, Texta 1988, but of course White should keep his bishop with 22 鱼e3!.

22 **Zea1** (D)

22 營e3 ②h7! allows the exchange of bishops, which eases Black's defence, but 22 axb5 is another promising option. After 22...axb5 23 皇e3 皇f8 24 營e2 皇c8 25 ②d2 皇d7 26 置ea1 White's control of the a-file gives him a slight edge, Dimitrov-Gullaksen, Debrecen Echt 1992.

After 22 Zeal White's chances to play on both sides of the board give him a modest but persistent advantage. Nevertheless, Black remains very solid, if a little passive, and many players are willing to defend this position. Here are some sample lines:



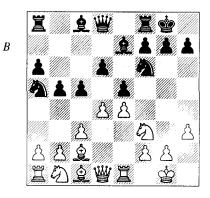
a) 22...②h7 23 皇e3! (naturally, White keeps this bishop) 23....皇f6 24 ②e2 ②f8 25 ②c1 ②fd7 26 axb5 axb5 27 b4 cxb3 28 ②xb3 豐c7 29 ②xc5 ②xc5 30 豐e2 皇c8 31 單a7 豐d8 32 單1a5 puts Black under great pressure,

Topalov-Van der Sterren, Antwerp 1997.

- b) 22...h4!? 23 \(\Delta\)xh4 \(\Delta\)fxe4 24 \(\Delta\)xe4 \(\Delta\)xe5 \(\Delta\)
- c) 22.... 全c8!? 23 axb5 axb5 24 罩a7 (24 營e2 allows 24... 包xd5!) 24... 罩b7 25 罩a8 包fd7 26 全e3 營c7 27 罩f1 罩a7 28 罩xa7 營xa7 29 包g5 全d8 30 含h1 全b6 and Black has equalized, Svidler-Piket, Wijk aan Zee 1999.

15 The Chigorin Defence

1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 &b5 a6 4 &a4 ②f6 5 0-0 &e7 6 Ee1 b5 7 &b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 ②a5 10 &c2 c5 11 d4 (D)



The Chigorin Defence (9... 2a5) is the traditional way for Black to defend the Closed Lopez. Black gains time by attacking the Lopez bishop and uses this tempo to connect his queenside pawns with ...c5. Since the emergence of the Breyer and the Zaitsev Variations, the Chigorin has declined in popularity, but it remains a very well respected line and over the years it has built up a significant body of theory.

If the Chigorin set-up does have a weakness, then it's the offside positioning of the knight on a5. Often Black has to expend several tempi to get it back into play. On the plus side for Black, many lines offer counterattacking chances, especially when the

c-file is opened with the pawn exchange ...cxd4.

The Theory of the Chigorin Defence

1 e4 e5 2 🖄 f3 🖄 c6 3 🕸 b5 a6 4 🕸 a4 🖄 f6 5 0-0 🕸 e7 6 🖺 e1 b5 7 🕸 b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 🖄 a5 10 🕸 c2 c5 11 d4

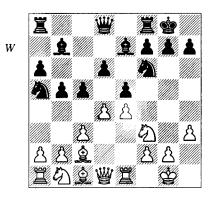
Now we will consider Black's four main moves:

A:	11 ⊈b 7	128
B:	11ව්d7	130
C:	11∳∆c6	132
D:	11 ≝c 7	133

Firstly, here are a couple of less frequently played ideas:

- a) 11... \$\mathbb{E} 8!? 12 \text{ dxe5 dxe5 } 13 \times xe5 \$\times d6 (13... \times b7 14 \times f3 \times d6 15 \times g4 \$\times xg4 \times c4 17 f4! was good for White in Smirin-Gofshtein, Israel 1991) 14 \times xf7! \times xf7 15 e5 \times 7 16 \$\times f4! \times c7 (16... \times b8 17 \times d2! \times d5 18 \$\times h5 + \times f8 19 \times g5 gives White a very strong attack) 17 \$\times a \times d7 18 e6 + \$\times xc6 19 \times xd7 + \times xd7 20 \times xc7 and White has a healthy extra pawn, Sax-Hebden, London ECC 1993.
- b) 11...cxd4 12 cxd4 \(\hat{\hat{L}} b7 13 d5!? \)
 (13 \(\hat{\hat{L}} bd2 \) transposes to Line A)
 13...\(\hat{\hat{L}} c8 14 \(\hat{\hat{L}} d3 \) \(\hat{\hat{L}} d7 15 \) \(\hat{\hat{L}} e3 g6 16 \)
 b4 \(\hat{\hat{L}} b7 17 \) \(\hat{\hat{L}} c3! \) favoured White in Leko-L.B.Hansen, Copenhagen 1995.

A) 11...单b7 (D)



A favourite of the Ukrainian grand-master Oleg Romanishin.

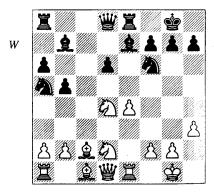
12 **包bd2**

Continuing with classical development. It should be pointed out that 12 dxe5 dxe5 13 ②xe5?! Wxd1 14 ②xd1 ③xe4 15 ②f3 f5 leaves Black with no problems at all. However 12 d5, blocking the centre and the b7-bishop, is an important alternative. Play continues 12...②c4 (improving the position of the knight) 13 b3 ②b6 14 a4 (14 ②bd2 g6 15 ②f1 ②h5 16 ②h6 Ze8 17 Yd2 ②f8 was equal in Vasiukov-Romanishin, Vršac 1989) 14...②c8! (the bishop has no future on b7, where it's simply biting on granite) and now:

a) 15 ②bd2 g6 16 ②d3 ②d7 17 a5 ②c8 18 ②f1 ②h5 19 ②h6 置e8 20 營d2 ②f6 21 b4 c4 (the queenside is closed, leaving both sides to concentrate on the other wing) 22 ②c2 ②f4!? 23 置a3 g5 24 含h1 含h8 25 h4 g4 with a very unclear position, Wahls-Romanishin, Biel 1995.

b) 15 \(\preceq\$e3 bxa4 16 bxa4 \(\preceq\$\text{C}\$c4 17 \$c1 ②a5! (an incredible piece of prophylaxis; the knight will be attacked on c4 in any case so it moves away now) 18 Øbd2 (after 18 ₩d3, Black shouldn't play 18...c4?! 19 營e2 營c7 20 \(\dot{a}\)a3!, when he has some problems down the a3-f8 diagonal, Anand-Romanishin, New York PCA Ct (2) 1994, but instead 18... ②h5 19 c4 **\(\mathbb{\texts}\)**b8 20 单d2 g6 21 營c3 罩b4!, with substantial counterplay for Black, Fogarasi-Romanishin, Balatonbereny 1995) 18... Wc7 19 c4 \(\mathbb{L} b8 \) 20 \(\mathbb{L} a2 \) g6 21 \(\mathbb{L} b2 \) \(\mathbb{L} h5 \) 22 Qd3 Qd8 23 Qc3 f6 24 Qf1 ≥g7 25 ₩c2 If7 with a level position, Anand-Romanishin, New York PCA Ct (4) 1994.

12...cxd4 13 cxd4 exd4 14 ∅xd4 ≝e8 (D)



This is one of the main ideas of the Romanishin Variation. Black gives up the centre and sets about assaulting White's e4-pawn, which in many lines proves to be just as vulnerable as the more outwardly weak d6-pawn. Black can also contemplate a timely ...d5 in

order to liquidate the centre entirely, although he must be careful that this break cannot be answered by a favourable e5 advance.

15 b3

Preparing the queenside fianchetto and preventing any thoughts of ... 2c4. A slightly more active plan is 15 b4!? 2c6 (15...2c4? 16 2xc4 bxc4 17 2a4! If 8 18 2g5 Ic8 19 2f5 is very strong for White) 16 2xc6 2xc6 17 2b2, when White has the a2-g8 diagonal available for his light-squared bishop. On the other hand, the c4-square is now a potential outpost for the black knight, and this fact should dictate Black's coming moves. Now:

- a) 17...全f8?! (the plan of attacking the e4-pawn is not so effective here) 18 實行3! 星c8 19 全b3 豐e7 20 星ad1 全b7 21 豐f5 and the white bishops point menacingly at the black king, Xie Jun-Chiburdanidze, Manila wom Wch (3) 1991.
- b) 17...②d7! 18 ②b3 ②f6 19 ②xf6 營xf6 20 ②d4 ②e5 21 ②xc6 ②xc6 22 營d2 黨ac8 23 ②b3 ②d4 with an equal position, Popović-Romanishin, Novy Smokovec 1992.

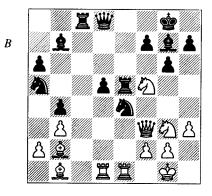
Another possibility for White is to continue the usual knight manoeuvre with 15 ②f1. This is actually another main line, but it allows Black to carry out his plan and practical results have been very reasonable for the second player. One sample variation is 15...②f8 16 ②g3 g6 17 b3 d5!? 18 e5 ②e4 19 ②xe4 dxe4 20 ②xe4 Exe5 21 ③xb7 Exe1+ 22 Wxe1 ②xb7 with a completely level endgame.

15...≜f8 16 ≜b2 g6 17 ₩f3

The paradoxical 17 b4!? is also quite tempting. White loses a tempo, but Black has already committed himself to ...\$\(\textit{\textit{g}}\) f8 and ...\$\(\textit{g}\). Following 17...\$\(\textit{Q}\)c6 18 \$\(\textit{Q}\)xc6 \$\(\textit{k}\)xc6 \$\(\textit{k}\)xc7 \$\(\textit{k}\)xc7

17... **≜**g7 18 **Ξ**ad1 **Ξ**c8 19 **≜**b1 **₩**e7

19...b4!? 20 af1 d5 is thought to be risky after 21 e5!? De4 22 ag3 Exe5 23 adf5! (D), but in fact things are not nearly so clear.



- - b) 23...2 g5! 24 Wf4 and now:
- b1) 24...\(\tilde{\Delta}\)e6? 25 \(\Delta\)h6+ \(\Delta\)xh6 26 \(\Delta\)xe5 was clearly better for White in

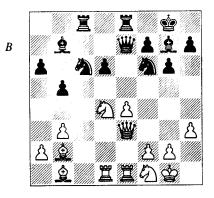
the game Velimirović-Romanishin, Vršac 1989.

b2) 24... 🗓 xe1+! 25 🗒 xe1 🚊 xb2 26 🗇 e7+ (26 🖺 h6+ 🕏 g7 leads to nothing) 26... 🕏 f8 27 💆 xg5 (or 27 🖆 xc8 🚊 c3!) 27... 💆 c6 28 🔄 gf5 🚊 g7 29 🖾 xg7 🕏 xg7, when 30 🖾 f5+ 🕏 g8 31 🖆 h6+ 🕏 g7 is a draw by repetition, while 30 🚊 d3!? keeps the game going, although Black does have an extra pawn to counterbalance White's activity.

20 ₩e3

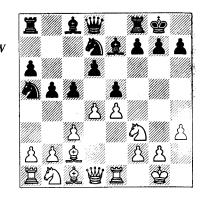
20 Ie3 2c6 21 2xc6 2xc6 22 Ide1 2h5 was also slightly better for White in Akopian-Motwani, Groningen 1990.

20...2c6 21 2f1 (D)



We are following Short-Thipsay, British Ch (Torquay) 1998. White kept a small advantage after 21...公xd4 22 全xd4 營f8 23 f3 公d5 24 營f2 公c3 25 全xg7 全xg7 26 量d3 公xb1 27 罩xb1 星e6 28 罩bd1.

B) 11...**公**d7 (D)



Paul Keres first came up with this move in the 1960s. Black defends his e5-pawn, but also prepares to exert pressure on the white centre, and in particular the d4-square. This can be augmented (usually after ...cxd4) by ... 2c6 and ... 2f6.

12 **Dbd2**

12 dxc5!? is interesting, cutting across Black's basic plan. White will try to use the d5 outpost, which has become even more enticing since Black's knight has moved away from f6. Following 12...dxc5 13 \(\Delta\)bd2 we have:

a) 13... Cr? (this move falls in with White's plan) 14 2f1 2b6 15 2e3 2d8 16 2e2 2e6 17 2d5! 2xd5 18 exd5 2xd5 19 2xe5 and Black faces a very nasty kingside attack. Fischer-Keres, Curação Ct 1962.

b) 13...\$b7 14 \$\mathrev{w}e2\$ \$\mathrev{w}c7\$ 15 \$\infty\$ff \$\infty\$c4 16 b3 \$\infty\$d6 17 c4! \$\mathrev{E}fe8\$ 18 \$\infty\$b2 \$\delta f8\$ 19 \$\mathrev{E}ad1\$ with an edge to White, Short-Portisch, Tilburg 1988.

c) 13...f6 14 ②h4 ②b6 15 ②f5 罩f7 16 豐g4 \$\delta\$h8 and now Fischer recommends 17 h4, intending h5 and ②f3-h4, with chances of a kingside attack.

12...cxd4

Recently the alternative capture 12...exd4!? has been seen quite a bit. After 13 cxd4 ②c6 we have:

- a) 14 句f1 cxd4 15 包xd4 包xd4 16 豐xd4 包e5 17 f4 包c6 18 豐d1 皇f6 looks OK for Black, Yurtaev-Nenashev, USSR Ch 1991.
- b) 14 d5 ②ce5 15 ②xe5 looks a better bet. After 15...dxe5?! 16 b3!, White can set about attacking the b5-pawn with a4, ②d3 and ¥e2. More resilient is 15...②xe5 16 f4 ②g6 17 ②f3, when 17...f5 18 e5 looks critical

13 cxd4 ②c6

This is stronger than 13...单f6 14 ②f1 ②c6 (or 14...②c4?! 15 b3 ②cb6 16 单b2 g6 17 ②e3 单g7 18 曾d2 单b7 19 墨ad1 and White is beautifully coordinated, Timman-Magomedov, Elista OL 1998) 15 单e3 exd4 16 ②xd4 ②de5 17 单b3 and White is better, Tal-Johannsson, Reykjavik 1964.

14 **②b3**

This move is currently thought to be White's best chance for an advantage. 14 d5 \(\tilde{2}\) b4 15 \(\tilde{2}\) b1 a5 16 a3 \(\tilde{2}\) a6 17 b4 \(\tilde{2}\) b6 18 \(\tilde{2}\) b3 \(\tilde{2}\) d7 gave Black equality in Suetin-Tal, USSR Ch 1964, while 14 \(\tilde{2}\) f1 exd4 transposes to note 'a' to Black's 12th move.

14...a5 15 &d3

15 \(\)easil? also promises an edge to White, e.g. 15...a4 16 \(\)bd2 exd4 17 \(\)xd4 \(\)xd4 \(\)xd4 \(\)xd4 \(\)2 \(\)2 \(\)2 \(\)2 \(\)2 \(\)2 \(\)2 \(\)2 \(\)2 \(\)2 \(\)2 \(\)2 \(\)2 \(\)2 \(\)3 23 b3 \(\)2 \(\)6 24 \(\)Bb1 \(\)2 \(\)4 25 \(\)3 d5 and Black's queenside pawns could actually become quite weak, Gligorić-Reshevsky, Tel-Aviv OL 1964.

15...**≜**a6

15...a4 is met by 16 兔xb5! when 16...axb3 17 兔xc6 罩xa2 18 罩b1 leaves the b3-pawn ready to be taken, while 16...豐b6 17 兔xc6 豐xc6 18 ②bd2 兔f6 19 b3! exd4 20 兔b2 ②e5 21 兔xd4 兔e6 22 罩e3 afforded Black no compensation for the pawn in Tal-Romanishin, Jurmala 1987.

16 d5 ②b4 17 **≜**f1 a4

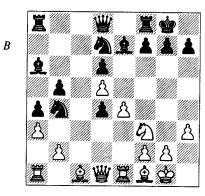
Delaying this move is asking for trouble. After 17... Zc8 White can play 18 2xa5! as 18... xa5 runs into 19 dd2, followed by 20 a3, winning the piece back while keeping an extra pawn.

18 5 bd4!?

This is a very clever move. Previously the main line ran 18 a3 🖾 xd5 19 wxd5 and now:

- a) 19...axb3 20 鱼xb5 包f6 21 營d3 鱼xb5 22 營xb5 營b8 23 營xb8 罩axb8 24 鱼g5 with a slight edge to White, as the b3-pawn is quite weak, Sax-Am.Rodriguez, Subotica IZ 1987.
- b) 19... \(\Ordrightarrow\) b6 20 \(\waddelightarrow\) d1 axb3 21 \(\waddelightarrow\) xb3 \(\waddelightarrow\) d7 was roughly level in Hellers-Timman, Amsterdam 1986.

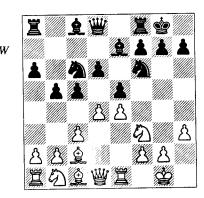
18...exd4 19 a3 (D)



This is a crucial position in the evaluation of Keres's Variation. Let's look at some of Black's possibilities:

- a) 19... 公c2? 20 豐xc2 皇f6 21 皇f4 星c8 22 豐d2 gave White a clear plus in Lau-Toshkov, Skien U-18 Wch 1979.
- b) 19... af6 20 axb4 b6 21 b3 axb3 22 xb3 ac5 23 axb3 22 xb3 ac5 23 axe5 dxe5 24 as was also good for White in Shamkovich-Benjamin, USA 1976. The a6-bishop is a very poor piece.
- c) 19...②xd5 (a recent try) 20 exd5 ②f6 21 ②xd4 ②c5 22 ②c6 豐b6 23 ②f4 單fe8 24 豐c2 ②b3 25 單ad1! and White was on top in Anand-Piket, Wijk aan Zee 1999.
- d) 19...②c5!? is an untried suggestion from NCO. Now 20 ②xd4 全f6 21 axb4 ②xd4 22 bxc5 dxc5 looks quite unclear, but 20 axb4 ②b3 21 單b1 全f6 22 ②d3, preparing ②d2, may still give White the edge.

C) 11...4\(\sigma \color (D)



Immediately putting pressure on d4, and inviting White to close the

centre with a gain of time. Once again, you'll find lots of Romanishin games in the notes. Nowadays this line has gone out of fashion but it still remains a sound option.

12 d5

If 12 ②bd2 Black does best to release the tension in the centre with 12...cxd4 13 cxd4 exd4 After 14 ②b3 ②b4 15 鱼b1 d3! 16 ②bd4 鱼b7 17 a3 ②c2 18 ②xc2 dxc2 19 鱼xc2 置e8, when Black was equal in Abramović-Romanishin, Stara Pazova 1988.

12...Da5

Black's two other knight moves are not so good:

- a) 12...②b8 13 a4 ②b7 14 ②bd2 ②bd7 15 ②f1 and now if Black continues naturally with 15... 且e8 16 ②g3 ③f8 he is merely two tempi down on the Breyer Variation.
- b) 12...②a7 13 a4 ②d7 (13....Qd7 14 ②xe5! dxe5 15 d6 is good for White) 14 Qe3 豐c7 15 ②bd2 ②b6 16 a5 ②d7 17 b4 led to a significant advantage for White in Nunn-Van der Wiel, Brussels 1988.

13 **Dbd2**

- 13 b3!? is a serious alternative to the text. White prevents ... ©c4 and keeps the option of developing the c1-bishop before the b1-knight. Black can reply:
- a) 13...g6 14 a4 \(\Delta\)d7 (ECO suggests 14...\(\Delta\)e8 as an improvement, which is fine until you see 15 axb5 axb5 16 b4!) 15 axb5 axb5 16 \(\Delta\)xe5 dxe5 17 d6 \(\Delta\)h5 18 dxe7 \(\Delta\)xe7 19 \(\Delta\)e3 and the bishop-pair gave White an edge in Benjamin-Romanishin, Moscow 1987.

- b) 13...2d7 14 2xe5! dxe5 15 d6, again with a small plus.
- c) 13... De8 14 a4 2d7 15 axb5 axb5 16 2e3 g6 17 Dbd2 Dg7 18 b4 cxb4 19 cxb4 Dc4 20 Dxc4 bxc4 21 dd2 f5 with an unclear position, Psakhis-Romanishin, Moscow 1986.

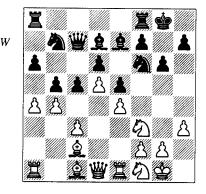
13...g6

Preparing ... 2h5, which at the moment would fail to 2xe5. Black's other plan here is 13...c4, preparing ... 2b7-c5. After 14 2f1 2b7 White has two ways to achieve the advantage:

- a) 15 g4!? h6 16 包g3 包h7 17 含h2 全g5 18 包xg5 hxg5 19 全e3 置e8 20 營d2 f6 (Chandler-Romanishin, USSR vs Rest of the World, London 1984) and now I like the idea of 21 全g2, followed by f3, 置h1 and h4.
- b) 15 b3 \$\cong c7 16 \textit{\$\textit{ab2}\$ \cong cxb3 17 axb3 \$\textit{\$\textit{Cc5}\$ 18 \$\textit{\$\textit{C}\$}\$3d2 \$\textit{\$\textit{ad7}\$ 19 b4 \$\textit{\$\textit{C}\$}\$a4 20 \$\textit{\$\textit{axa4}\$ bxa4 21 c4 and White will push through with c5, Hulak-Romanishin, Yugoslavia-USSR 1976.}

Note that 13... wc7 transposes to Line D.

14 a4 单d7 15 b4 包b7 16 包f1 豐c7 (D)



Black seems to be close to equality here, e.g.:

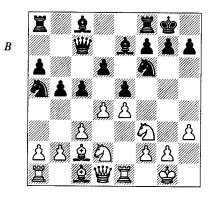
- a) 17 皇h6 置fc8 18 axb5 cxb4 19 bxa6 包c5 20 cxb4 包xa6 21 皇a4 包xb4 22 皇xd7 置xa1 23 豐xa1 包xd7 was level in Geller-Romanishin, Moscow 1985.
- b) 17 a5 Lac8 18 Ld3 Oh5 19 Lh6 Lfe8 20 Lc1 Lf8 21 Ld2 Lg7 22 c4 Of4 was unclear in Psakhis-Romanishin, Sochi 1984.

D)

11...豐c7

Defending e5 with the queen is Black's most common choice.

12 **包bd2** (D)



Now Black has many different ways to proceed:

D1: 12...⊈d7 134

D2: 12...**Ee8** 134

D3: **12**...**夕**c6 135

D4: 12...cxd4 136

Other moves often transpose, e.g.:

a) 12... \(\begin{aligned}
\begin{aligned}
12 & \text{Md8} & \text{and now 13 } \(\beta\) f1 cxd4 \\
14 cxd4 gives us Line D41, while

White can also consider 13 b3!?, e.g. 13... **≜** d7!? (13...cxd4 14 cxd4 is also Line D41) 14 d5 (keeping the tension with 14 2f1 also looks good) 14...g6 15 2f1 c4 16 b4 2b7 (Brodsky-Piket, Wijk aan Zee 1995) and now the best chance to keep the advantage is probably 17 a4!?.

b) 12... 2 b7 13 d5 (13 2)f1 cxd4 14 cxd4 gives us Line D4) 13... 2c8 and we have transposed to Line D3.

D1)

12...**⊈**d7

This is a rather passive system where Black just contents himself with the completing the mobilization of his forces and consolidating his kingside. This is achieved but only at the cost of reducing his chances of counterplay.

13 分f1 單fe8

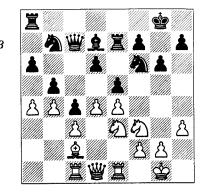
13...cxd4 14 cxd4 would give us Line D43.

Black can also improve his knight's position by 13... 2c4. Then Topalov-Frolov, Biel IZ 1993 continued 14 ₩e2 \(\begin{aligned} \text{#fe8} \) 15 b3 \(\Delta \) b6 16 dxe5 dxe5 17 c4 2h5 (17...bxc4 18 bxc4 2a4 19 ≜xa4 ≜xa4 20 De3 followed by Dd5 is good for White) 18 2d2 Zab8 19 a4 bxc4 20 bxc4 and now according to Frolov Black should play 20... 2c8 21 De3 Df4 22 Wf1 De6, although after 23 Ød5 White still retains a slight edge.

14 b3 g6 15 \(\hat{Q} g5! \(\Delta \h h 5 \) 16 \(\hat{Q} xe7 \) **Exe7** 17 **⊘**e3 **⊘**f6

If 17... 264?. White can chase the knight immediately with 18 g3, as 18... 4 xh3+ 19 曾g2 里ee8 20 dxe5 dxe5 21 \(\mathbb{Z}\) h1 gives White a very large advantage. After the captures on h3 the rook will be no match for the two minor pieces, especially as White has the inviting d5 outpost.

18 \(\mathbb{Z}\)c1!? \(\overline{D}\)b7 19 b4 c4 20 a4 (D)



White has the advantage in every sector of the board, holding the key pawn-breaks in both the centre and the queenside, and having chances to exploit the weak dark squares on the kingside. Stein-Matanović, Tel-Aviv OL 1964 continued 20... Zae8 21 axb5 axb5 22 Ia1 2c6 23 Ia6 Wc8 24 d5 **盒d7** 25 **勾h2 含g7** 26 豐f3 罩f8 27 **Z**eal and White was in total control.

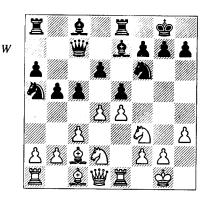
D2)

12...**Ee8** (D)

This is similar to the last line. except Black doesn't commit the c8bishop so soon.

13 **Df**1

This is the most obvious response, but there's something to be said about the ambitious 13 b4!?, which was introduced by Mikhail Tal. Play can continue 13...cxb4 14 cxb4 2c6 (14...2c4



15 ②xc4 bxc4 16 a4 is good for White as the c4-pawn could become exposed after \(\mathbb{L}(1) \) 15 \(\delta b2 \) (15 a3 is also not bad, but this pawn sacrifice looks quite promising) 15... 2xb4 (Black can refrain from taking the pawn, but 15...exd4 16 ②xd4 ②xd4 17 ≜xd4 ♠b7 18 \(\mathbb{Z} \) c1 is a bit better for White) 16 **\$b3 \$\alpha\$d3** (16...**\$\alpha\$d7** 17 **\$\beta\$c1 \$\beta\$b6** 18 a3! ②d3 19 **\$**xf7+ **\$**xf7 20 **¥**b3+ \$\displaystyle for White for White) 17 ②xf7+ ③xf7 (not 17... ⑤f8? 18 ②xe8 ②xb2 19 ₩b1 ②a4 20 \(\mathbb{Z} \)c1 with a winning position, Tal-Gurgenidze, USSR Ch 1961) 18 \bigwedge b3+ \Qd5 19 \bigwedge xd3 \Qf4 20 \bullet b3+ \\ \mathref{e}e6 21 d5 \\ \mathref{e}d7 22 \\ \mathref{e}xe5! with a clear advantage for White, Jansa-Kostro, Vrnjačka Banja Z 1967.

13...**⊈**f8

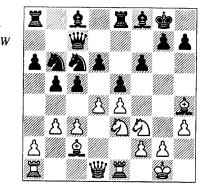
Pressurizing the e4-pawn like this is more accurate than 13...g6, which allows White to achieve a significant advantage after 14 De3 af8 15 b4! cxb4 16 cxb4 2c6 17 2b2 2b7 (or 17... ②xb4 18 ♠b3 with excellent play for the pawn) 18 \(\mathbb{Z}\)c1 \(\mathbb{W}\)b6 19 \(\mathbb{L}\)b3, Tukmakov-Smyslov, USSR Ch 1973.

14 2g5 2d7 15 2e3

15 b3 \(\Delta \) b6 16 \(\mathbb{Z} \) c1 \(\Delta \) c6 17 \(\Delta \) b1 De7 18 Dg3 a5 gave Black enough counterplay in R.Byrne-Ivkov, Skopje OL 1972.

15... **②b6 16 b3 f6 17 ♠h4 ②c6** (D)

135



Yanofsky-Kraidman, Tel-Aviv 1966 now continued 18 dxc5 dxc5 19 公d5 ₩d8 20 a4 with a small plus to White.

D3)

12...€)c6

This line is similar to, but more popular than 11... 20c6 (Line C). Again Black puts pressure on d4 and asks White to make a decision about the centre.

13 d5

Blocking the centre with the textmove has become the main choice, rather than White's other plan starting with 13 dxc5, which was popularized by Fischer during the 1960s. After 13...dxc5 14 包f1 White has a straightforward plan of trying to occupy the d5-outpost. This idea claimed guite a few victims until a successful antidote was found. After 14... e6 15 De3

里ad8 16 豐e2 c4! 17 包f5 (17 包g5 can be met by 17...h6! 18 ②xe6 fxe6, when the doubled e-pawns protect many squares, in particular d5, while White has to be wary of the pseudo-sacrifice ...包d4) 17...置fe8 18 兔g5 包d7 19 兔xe7 ②xe7 ②xe7 20 包g5 包f8 21 ②xe6 ②xe6 22 g3 豐c6 Black is extremely solid, Rubinetti-Filip, Palma de Mallorca IZ 1970.

13...**夕d8**

This is the most popular knight move here. Black hopes to reactivate this knight via the f7-square. The other choices include:

- a) 13... 2a7 (this looks too cumbersome) 14 2f1 2d7 15 g4 2c8 16 2g3 g6 17 2h2 2e8 18 2h6 2g7 19 2g1 and White has already built up a menacing kingside initiative, Klovans-L.Schneider, Jurmala 1978.
- b) 13... 2a5 14 b3! (preventing ... 2c4 before playing 2f1) 14... 2d7 15 2f1 2b7 16 2g3 (16 c4 bxc4 17 bxc4 2fb8 18 2d2 2c8 19 a4 is also better for White, Balashov-Kholmov, USSR Ch 1969) 16...c4 17 b4! (again restraining Black's problem knight) 17... 2fc8 18 2f5 2f8 19 2h2 with a clear advantage for White, Geller-Mecking, Palma de Mallorca IZ 1970.

14 a4

White's future lies in a kingside attack, but it's worth flicking this move in, as the a-file could also prove to be a useful asset.

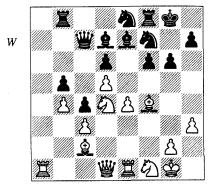
14...**E**b8 15 axb5 axb5 16 b4 c4

Or 16... ②b7 17 ②f1 ②d7 18 ③e3 国a8 19 營d2 国fc8 20 ②d3 g6 21 ②g3 ②f8 22 国a2 and White was better in Karpov-Unzicker, Nice OL 1974.

17 2 f1 2 e8 18 2 3h2 f6 19 f4 exf4

Black must get a bit of air for his pieces. 19... 17 20 13 g6 21 f5! 2g7 22 g4 gave Black no breathing space in Karpov-Spassky, USSR Ch 1973.

20 \$\text{\$\ext{\$\text{\$\xitit{\$\xitit{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitit{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitit{\$\text{\$\exititt{\$\texitit{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitit{\$\text{\$\exititt{\$\exitit{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$}



Black's position remains very solid, but White's space advantage guarantees a slight plus. Ernst-Brandl, Hartberg 1991 continued 23 包e3 包g7 24 置a5 豐b7 25 ②c6!? 全xc6 26 dxc6 豐xc6 27 豐d5 豐xd5 28 ②xd5 and White had excellent play for the pawn.

D4)

12...cxd4

Black's most popular and active line. Black immediately seeks counterplay down the open c-file.

13 cxd4 (D)

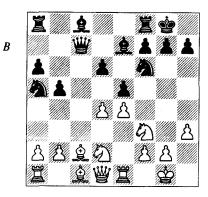
Now:

D41: 13... Zd8 137

D42: 13...⊈b7 137

D43: 13...\$d7 139

D44: 13...\(\beta\)c6 140



D41)

13...**≝d**8

A sneaky move, which is part of a plan to surprise White with ...d5.

14 b3

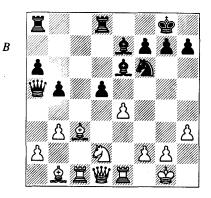
After 14 2f1 Black puts his plan into operation with 14...exd4. Now 15 2xd4 d5 looks fine for Black, while 15 2f4!? leads to the following lines:

- a) 15... ②c4 16 b3 ②a3 17 单d3 豐b6 18 ②g3 b4 19 豐d2 d5 20 罩ac1! and White was better in Korneev-Fernandez Garcia, Saragossa 1996.
- b) 15...②c6!? 16 &b3 \begin{align*} bb (the alternative 16... \December 6 also looks OK) 17 \Betact 1 \December d7 18 \December 93 \Betack Back 19 \Betack Be2 and now White was slightly better after 19...d3 20 \begin{align*} \begin{align*} \December d2 \December 21 \December 2xe5 \December dxe5 22 \Betack Back 23 \December 23 \Betack Back 24 \December 2xb6 \Betack d7 25 \December 65 in Popović-Zsu.Polgar, Novi Sad tt 1990, but 19...h6!, planning to meet 20 \Betack d2 with 20...g5, looks stronger.

14...②c6 15 &b2 exd4 16 ②xd4 ②xd4 17 &xd4 &e6

White maintains a small plus after 17...全b7 18 單c1 豐a5 19 全b1 單ac8 20 罩xc8 罩xc8 罩xc8 21 分f1.

18 \(\mathbb{Z} \)c1 \(\mathbb{Z} \)a5 \(19 \) \(\mathbb{L} \)b1 \(d5 \) 20 \(\mathbb{L} \)c3 \((D) \)



Black has achieved the desired ...d5 break, but there is still plenty to play for, e.g.:

- a) 20...b4 21 \(\text{\text}\) xf6 \(\text{\text}\) xf6 22 e5 \(\text{\text}\) g5 23 \(\text{\tilde{\text{\te}\text{\texi{\texi\texi{\text{\texitex{\text{\text{\texitex{\text{\text{\texi{\texi{\texi{\texi{\texi{\texi
- b) 20... 豐a3 21 e5 d4 and now, instead of 22 皇a1 包d5, which was unclear in the game Ernst-Wedberg, Lugano 1989, 22 exf6 deserves attention. After 22...dxc3 23 豐c2! (not 23 fxe7? cxd2) 23...g6 (or 23...皇xf6 24 豐xh7+ 含f8 25 包e4) 24 包c4! bxc4 25 fxe7 豐xe7 26 bxc4 豐g5 27 豐xc3 White is a pawn to the good.

D42)

13...**⊉**b7 14 d5

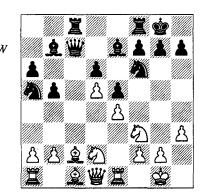
Nowadays this move, which gains space and blunts the b7-bishop, is more popular than the older 14 \bigcirc f1. One sample line after 14 \bigcirc f1 is 14... \square ac8 15 \square e2 d5!? 16 \bigcirc xe5 dxe4 17 \bigcirc g3 (or 17 \bigcirc g5 \square fd8 18 \bigcirc g3 h6

19 鱼h4 包c6 20 包xc6 鱼xc6 21 包f5 豐d7 22 包xe7+ 豐xe7 23 豐d2 單d7 and Black was equal in Murey-Pinter, French Cht 1994) 17...單fd8 18 包f5 鱼d6 19 包xd6 豐xd6 20 鱼e3 h6 21 豐d2 包c6 22 包xc6 鱼xc6 and White's bishop-pair is compensated by pressure on the d4-pawn, Stefansson-Pinter, Lyons ECC 1994.

14...**\mathbb{\mathbb{H}}ac8** (D)

Black logically puts his rook on the open c-file and attacks the c2-bishop. The only problem with this plan is that the b7-bishop may wind up being blocked out of the game for a long time. To deal with this, Black will try to arrange a timely ...f5 to blow open the centre and weaken the d5-pawn. Of course, this is much more easily said than done.

Another possibility is the immediate re-routing of the bishop with 14... 2c8. White can then continue in the classical manner with 15 2f1, but 15 b4!? also looks good. After 15... 2c4 16 2xc4 both 16... bxc4 17 2e3! 2d7 18 a4 and 16... xc4 17 2b1 2d7 18 2d3 yc7 19 2e3 favour White.



15 **≜**b1!?

This move is prophylaxis against Black's ...f5 break. On b1 the bishop is less prone to an attack from ... \(\tilde{\tilde{Q}}\)d7-c5 or ...\(\tilde{\tilde{Q}}\)h5-f4. Nevertheless, the more active 15 \(\tilde{\tilde{Q}}\)d3!? is a fully playable alternative, e.g. 15...\(\tilde{Q}\)d7 16 \(\tilde{Q}\)f1 f5 17 \(\tilde{Q}\)g3!? (17 exf5 \(\tilde{\tilde{Q}}\)xd5 18 \(\tilde{Q}\)5 \(\tilde{\tilde{Q}}\)s \(\tilde{Q}\)s 2xg5 \(\tilde{Q}\)as 8 20 \(\tilde{Q}\)g4 \(\tilde{Q}\)f6 21 \(\tilde{Q}\)g3 may also be a bit better for White, although Black does have central pawns in compensation for the bishop-pair) 17...f4 18 \(\tilde{Q}\)f5 and now:

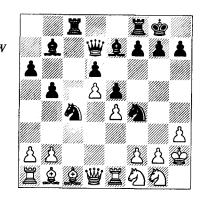
- a) 18...\$\delta\delta\delta\delta\geta\footnote{18} \delta\delta\delta\footnote{18} 4 h5 22 \$\overline{2}\delta\delta\text{ph2}\ is clearly better for White according to Leko. This position is a bit deceptive, as Black has managed to gain quite a bit of space on the kingside. However, with his bishop totally redundant on b7, Black will find it very difficult to arrange the desired ...g5-g4 push, while White's queenside attack should run reasonably smoothly.
- b) 18... \(\max\)f5!? 19 exf5 \(\infty\)c5 20 b3 \(\text{\$\text{\text{\$\exitt{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitt{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\text{\$\exitt{\$\exitt{\$\text{\$\$\text{\$\}}}}}}\$}}}} 180} eximinfines eximinfines eximinfines eximinfines eximinfines eximinfines eximinfines eximinfines eximinfines exi

15...**©**h5

Arranging a quick ...f5 is not so effective when the bishop is on b1. After 15... 2d7 16 2f1 f5?! 17 exf5! 2f6 18 2g5 2xd5 19 2e3 2b7 20 b3 2fe8 21 2d2 2d8 22 2b4 White was clearly on top in Shirov-Adla, Bordeaux rpd 1998.

16 ②f1 ②f4 17 �h2! ₩d7 18 ②g1 ②c4 (D)

The diagram looks rather amusing, with the black pieces seeming rather active, while the white ones are huddled



on the back rank. However, if you were able to shuffle your pieces at the start of the game, I imagine White's set-up would be a very popular one. In fact, this is as good as it gets for Black, as the next couple of moves see his knights driven back into defence. After 19 g3 2g6 20 b3 2b6 21 2e3 2d8 22 2e2 2e7 23 g4 2g6 24 2f5 White held the advantage in Van Riemsdijk-Matsuura, Curitiba 1992.

D43)

13...**⊈**d7

Once again, Black prepares to put a rook on c8. Compared to 13... b7 (Line D42), Black puts less immediate pressure on the centre, but on the other hand, if White advances d5, it doesn't leave the black bishop hitting a brick wall. Because of this, it makes more sense for White to keep the central tension.

14 **②**f1 **\mathbb{\ma**

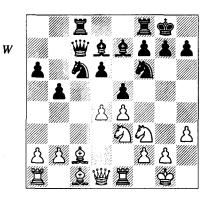
- 14... If c8 is an interesting attempt by Black to improve on the main line. Then:
 - a) 15 De3 Dc6 and now:

- a1) 16 d5 ②b4 17 ②b1 a5 18 a3 ②a6 shows the main point of Black's idea; his rook is well placed on a8. For example 19 b4? would now simply lose a pawn.
- a2) 16 a3 and now Fischer-Bisguier, US Ch (New York) 1958/9 continued 16...a5 17 d5 2d8 18 2d2 a4 19 2b4 2f8 20 2d3 with an advantage to White. However, 16...2xd4 17 2xd4 exd4 18 2xd4 d5! must be critical, reaching a position very similar to the note to White's 16th move, the only difference being the placing of the black rooks. This little difference helps White, but Black's position is still fully playable, e.g.:
- a21) 19 b4 dxe4 20 2xe4 2xe4 21 2d5 2f6 22 2xe4 2d8 looks pretty equal.
- b) Given all of this, the most accurate move for White may well be 15 \mathbb{Z} e2!?, leading to play similar to the next note.

15 9 e3

This is the main move here, but 15 置e2!? is also appealing, for example 15...置fe8 16 b3 ②c6 17 ②b2 ②f8 18 Ic1 幽b7 19 ②b1 g6 20 dxe5 dxe5 21 ②e3 ②g7 22 Id2 ②e6 23 ②d5 with an edge to White, Chandler-Thipsay, London Lloyds Bank 1989.

15...②c6 (D)



16 d5

An instructive mistake is 16 a3?! ②xd4 17 ②xd4 exd4 18 營xd4 d5! 19 e5 (19 exd5 ②c5! 20 營c3 ②xe3 21 ②xc3 ②xc3 22 ②xc3 ②xc3 ②xc3 ②xd5 favours Black) 19...②c5 20 營f4 ②fe8 21 ②f5 ②h5 22 營f3 ②xf2+! 23 營xf2 營xc2 24 營xc2 ②xc2 25 ②e3 ②c6 26 ②xd5 ②c5 and White is struggling to draw, Hartman-L.B.Hansen, Copenhagen 1996.

16... \(\Delta\) b4 17 \(\Delta\) b1 a5 18 a3 \(\Delta\) a6 19 b4!

This is an important move. White uses a little trick to gain valuable space on the queenside and fix the black pawn on b5, where it can be attacked.

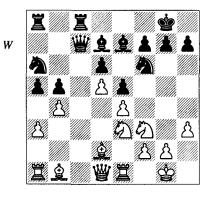
19...**E**a8

Black has other possibilities in this position:

a) 19...axb4 20 axb4 \$\cong b7\$ (certainly not 20...\$\Omega\xb4? 21 \$\omega\cdot 2!\$ trapping the knight – this is the trick) 21 \$\omega\cdot 2 \omega\cdot 8 22 \$\omega\cdot 3 \omega\cdot 6 23 \$\omega\cdot 2 \omega\cdot 6 27 24 \$\omega\cdot 1\$ \$\omega\cdot 8 25 \$\omega\cdot 6 23\$ \$\omega\cdot 8 26 \$\omega\cdot 8 25\$ \$\omega\cdot 6 23\$ \$\omega\cdot 8 26\$ \$\omega\cdot 8 23\$ \$\omega\cdot 8 23\$

b) 19...g6 20 单d2 ②h5 (20...axb4 21 axb4 數b7 22 单d3 ②c7 23 ②c2 was slightly better for White in Tal-Hjartarson, Reykjavik 1987) 21 单d3 ②f4 22 单f1 f5 23 exf5 gxf5 24 罩c1 數b7 25 罩xc8 數xc8 26 bxa5 ②c5 27 单b4 e4 28 ②d4! and Black has many weaknesses, Leko-Lukacs, Budapest 1993.

20 \(\text{dd} \) \(\text{Ifc8} \) (D)



White has a slight plus, although, as always, Black's position is very difficult to break down. Here are two possible continuations:

- a) 21 g4!? g6 22 单d3 數b7 23 數g2 单d8 24 包g1, planning to continue with 包e2 and f4, de Firmian-Piket, Amsterdam 1996.
- b) 21 \(\hat{2}\)d3 axb4 22 axb4 \(\bar{2}\)b7 23 \(\hat{2}\)h2 \(\hat{2}\)c7 (Anand-Piket, Amsterdam 1993) and now Anand recommends 24 \(\hat{2}\)c2, preventing ...\(\hat{2}\)h5 and preparing to recapture on a1 with the knight, followed by \(\hat{2}\)b3-a5.

D44)

13...£)c6

Immediately asking White questions in the centre. On this particular occasion, White is served best by over-protecting the d4-pawn.

14 9 b3 a5

Black begins the logical plan of attacking the b3-knight and gaining space on the queenside.

15 **≜**e3 a4

15...②b4 16 **a**bl a4 17 **b**d2 leads to the same position.

16 **②bd2 单d7**

Black also has two alternatives:

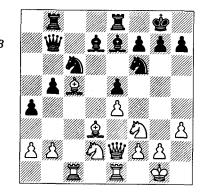
- a) 16.... 鱼e6 17 a3 ②a5 18 鱼d3 豐b8 19 豐e2 b4 20 axb4 豐xb4 21 鱼b1 exd4 22 鱼xd4 ②b3 23 ②xb3 鱼xb3 24 鱼c3 豐b7 25 ②d4 單fc8 26 ⑤f5 with a dangerous kingside attack, R.Byrne-F.Olafsson, Reykjavik 1984.
- b) 16... ②b4!? 17 鱼b1 鱼d7 18 a3 ②c6 19 鱼d3 ②a5 20 豐e2 (20 置c1!? 豐b8 21 豐e2 置e8 22 置c2 鱼d8 23 dxe5 dxe5 24 鱼c5 gave White a slight edge in the game Tal-G.Kuzmin, Leningrad 1977) 20... 豐b8 21 置ec1!? 置e8 22 置ab1 鱼f8 (22...h6 23 b4 axb3 24 ②xb3 ②xb3 25 罩xb3 leaves the b5-pawn very weak). The position after 22... 鱼f8 arose in Klovans-Beliavsky, Groningen 1992. Now instead of 23 b4?!, which allowed Black to equalize with 23...axb3 24 ②xb3 ②xb3

25 🗓xb3 exd4! 26 🚉xd4 👑d8, Beliavsky suggests 23 🚉g5! and only then 24 b4.

17 罩c1 豐b7 18 豐e2 罩fe8 19 单d3 罩ab8 20 dxe5

20 a3 exd4 21 \(\times \) xd4 \(\times \) e5 22 \(\times \) b1 \(\times \) d8 23 \(\times \) d4f3 and now 23...\(\times \) a5 24 \(\times \) xe5 dxe5 25 \(\times \) ed1 \(\times \) c6 26 b4 \(\times \) d8 27 \(\times \) c5 was good for White in Rõtšagov-Gausel, Gothenburg 1998, but Black should keep the pressure on e4 with 23...\(\times \) g6!.

20...dxe5 21 **\delta** c5 (D)



This is Ljubojević-Timman, Bugojno 1982. After 21...②h5 22 g3! 皇xc5 (22...皇xh3 23 皇xe7 ②xe7 24 ②g5!) 23 罩xc5 豐b6 24 罩ec1 White kept a small advantage.

Index of Variations

1 e4 e5 2 Øf3 Øc6 3 &b5

Chapter 1: Without 3...a6, 3...\(\Delta f6, 3...\(\Delta c5 \) or 3...f5

Chapter 2: 3...f5 4 ②c3! Chapter 3: 3... **2**c5 4 0-0 Chapter 4: 3... 42f6 4 0-0

3...a6 4 \@a4

Chapter 5: Without 4... 46

Chapter 6: 4... 2 f6 5 0-0

Chapter 7: 4... 2 f6 5 0-0 2 xe4 6 d4

Chapter 8: 4... 2 f6 5 0-0 \(\)e7 6 \(\)Ee1 (6... b5 7 \(\)e3 b3 0-0 8 a4)

Chapter 10: 4... 수 16 5 0-0 호e7 6 프e1 b5 7 호b3 d6 8 c3 (8...0-0 9 h3)

4...4)f6 5 0-0 &e7 6 He1 b5 7 &b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3

Chapter 11: 9... 2d7 10 d4

Chapter 12: 9... 2b7 10 d4

Chapter 13: 9...h6 10 d4 \(\mathbb{L} = 8 \) 11 \(\D\) bd2 \(\mathbb{L} f 8 \) 12 \(\D\) f1

Chapter 14: 9... 5b8 10 d4

Chapter 15: 9... 2a5 10 2c2 c5 11 d4

1: Rare Third Moves for Black 1 e4 e5 2 Øf3 Øc6 3 &b5 9

A: 3... 2 b4 9

B: 3...d6 10

C: 3...5)d4 12 4 2xd4 exd4 5 0-0 12

C1: 5...c6 12 C2: 5...\(\perp\) c5 13

D: 3...g6 14 4 d4!? exd4 5 \(\text{\texts} g5 \(\text{\texts} e7 6 \)

≜xe7 14

D1: 6...\www.xe7 14 D2: 6... 2 gxe7 15

E: 3... 2) ge7 16

E1: 4 2 c3!? 16

E2: 4 c3 16

2: The Schliemann Variation 1 e4 e5 2 \$\alpha\$f3 \$\alpha\$c6 3 \$\alpha\$b5 f5 4 \$\alpha\$c3!

18 A: 4... 2)f6 19

B: 4...5)d4 19

C: 4...fxe4 21 5 2 xe4 21

C1: 5... 2)f6 21

C2: 5...d5 22 6 ②xe5! dxe4 7 ②xc6

C21: 7...bxc6 23 C22: 7... \dd d5 24

C23: 7... **曾g5** 25 8 **曾e2 公f6** 9 **f4** 25

3: The Classical Variation 1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 ②b5 ②c5 4 0-0

A: 4.... ②ge7 30 B: 4...5)d4 30

C: 4... 5 f6 31 5 c3 31

C1: 5... 2xe4!? 32

C2: 5...0-0 32

4: The Berlin Defence

1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 ②b5 ②f6 4 0-0

37 4...9) xe4 5 d4! 37

A: 5...**⊈e**7 38

B: 5... 40 d6 40 6 2 xc6 dxc6 7 dxe5 40

B1: 7...9 e4!? 41

B2: 7...②f5 42 8 豐xd8+ 尝xd8 9 分c3

B21: 9... De7 42

B22: 9... de6 43

B23: 9...h6 44

B24: 9...**\$**e8 44

B241: 10 b3 44

B242: 10 h3 45

5: The Deferred Steinitz and Other 4th Move Alternatives

1 e4 e5 2 4 f3 4 c6 3 4 b5 a6 4 4 a4 48

A: 4...f5 49

B: 4...b5 49

C: 4...d6 50 5 c3 50

C1: **5...f5** 51

C2: 5...\(\delta\) d7 52 6 d4 52

C21: 6... 2 ge7 52

C22: 6...g6 53

6: Møller and Arkhangelsk Variations

1 e4 e5 2 Øf3 Øc6 3 &b5 a6 4 &a4

②f6 5 0-0 56

A: **5...d6** 56

B: 5... \(\) c5 57 6 c3 b5 7 \(\) c2!? 58

B1: 7...d5!? 58

B2: 7...d6 59

C: 5...b5 59 6 \(\text{\pm} \) b3 59

C1: 6...\(\delta\) c5 60 7 c3 d6 8 a4 61

C11: 8....**2**b7 62

C12: 8...**\mathbb{\mathbb{H}}**b8 62

C13: 8...💄g4 *63*

C2: 6... \$ b7 64 7 \(\mathbb{H} e1 \) \$ c5 8 c3 65

C21: 8...0-0 65

C22: 8...d6 66 9 d4 &b6 10 &e3 0-0

11 2bd2 h6 12 h3 66

C221: 12... **E**e8 67

C222: 12...exd4 67

C223: 12...**\(\mathbb{\mathbb{Z}}\)**b8 68

7: The Open Lopez

1 e4 e5 2 Øf3 Øc6 3 & b5 a6 4 & a4 ②f6 5 0-0 ②xe4 6 d4 71 6...b5 7 ♠b3

d5 8 dxe5 &e6 9 4 bd2 71

A: 9....**⊈c5** 72

B: 9... 2 e7 73 10 c3 2 c5 11 2 c2 2 g4

12 **E**e1 73

B1: 12...0-0 74

B2: 12...**\@**d7 *75*

C: 9... 2 c5 75 10 c3 d4 75

C1: 11 ②g5!? 76

C11: 11...dxc3 77

C12: 11... d5!? 78

C13: 11...\suxg5 78

C2: 11 & xe6 79

8: The 8 a4 Anti-Marshall

1 e4 e5 2 **2** f3 **2** c6 3 **2** b5 a6 4 **2** a4 ②f6 5 0-0 ♠e7 6 ≌e1 83 6...b5 7 ♠b3

0-0 8 a4 83

A: 8...**\Zb8** 83

B: 8...b4 84

C: 8....**2.b7** 85 **9 d3** 85

C1: 9...**Ee8** 86

C2: 9...d6 86 10 5 bd2 86

C21: 10...4\d7 87 C22: 10...4\d5 88

10: Rare Closed Lopez Variations

1 e4 e5 2 🗹 f3 🖾 c6 3 🚊 b5 a6 4 🚨 a4 🖄 f6 5 0-0 🚊 e7 6 🖺 e1 b5 7 🚊 b3 d6 8 c3 96 8...0-0 9 h3 96

A: 9...a5 96 B: 9...**g**e6 97

11: The Karpov Variation

1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 ②b5 a6 4 ②a4 ②f6 5 0-0 ③e7 6 〖e1 b5 7 ②b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 ②d7 10 d4 99

A: 10...�b6 99 11 �bd2 99

A1: 11...exd4 100 A2: 11...\$f6 101

B: 10...\$f6 101 11 a4! 101

В1: 11...Дь8 102

B2: 11... 2a5 102

В3: 11... 2 b7 103

B31: 12 d5 103

B32: 12 2 a3 104

12: The Zaitsev Variation

1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 ②b5 a6 4 ②a4 ②f6 5 0-0 ②e7 6 罩e1 b5 7 ②b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 ②b7 10 d4 108 10...罩e8

11 **②bd2 ≜f8** 109

A: **12 d5** *109*

A1: **12...⊴**e**7** *109*

A2: 12... 4 b8 110 13 4 f1 4 bd7 110

A21: **14 3h2** *110* A22: **14 9g3** *111* A221: 14...**9**c5 *111*

A221: 14...96 111 A222: 14...g6 112

B: 12 a4 113 12...h6 13 &c2 exd4 14 cxd4 \(\tilde{Q}\)b4 15 \(\tilde{Q}\)b1 c5! 16 d5 \(\tilde{Q}\)d7 17

≝a3 114

B1: 17...c4 114 18 axb5 axb5 19 🖾d4

114

B11: 19...**\(\maxa**\)3 115

B12: 19...එe5 116

B2: 17...f5 116 18 @h2!? @f6 117 19

If3 Ie5 20 **Ixf5** 118

13: The Smyslov Variation

1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 ②b5 a6 4 ②a4 ②f6 5 0-0 ②e7 6 Ie1 b5 7 ②b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 h6 10 d4 Ie8 11 ②bd2 ②f8 12 ⑤f1 1/9

A: 12...**g**d7 *119*

B: 12...\(\hat{\mathbb{L}}\)b7 120

14: The Breyer Variation

1 e4 e5 2 包f3 包c6 3 息b5 a6 4 息a4 包f6 5 0-0 鱼e7 6 罩e1 b5 7 息b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 包b8 10 d4 122 10...包bd7 11 包bd2 息b7 12 息c2 123 12...罩e8 13 包f1 皇f8 14 包g3 g6 15 a4 c5 16 d5 124 16...c4 17 皇g5 h6 18 皇e3 包c5 19 營d2 125

15: The Chigorin Defence

1 e4 e5 2 ②f3 ②c6 3 &b5 a6 4 &a4 ②f6 5 0-0 &e7 6 Ee1 b5 7 &b3 d6 8 c3 0-0 9 h3 ②a5 10 &c2 c5 11 d4 127

A: **11...⊈b7** 128

B: 11...**5**d7 130

C: 11.... 2c6 132

D: 11... wc7 133 12 公bd2 133

D1: **12... 2 d7** 134

D2: 12... **Ee8** 134

D3: 12... Dc6 135

D4: 12...exd4 136 13 exd4 136

D41: 13...**≌**d8 *137*

D42: 13...**\$**b7 *137*

D43: 13...**⊈**d7 *139*

D44: 13...ᡚc6 140